ESAR'S CAMPAIGNS IN BRITAIN

T. RICE HOLMES

OXFORD
AT THE CLARENDON PRESS

NEW
CLARENDON PRESS SERIES

Under the general editorship of the
Rev. A. E. HILLARD, High Master of St. Paul's School.

CAESAR: THE GALLIC WAR. Edited by T. Rice Holmes. 1914. Crown 8vo ($7\frac{1}{2} \times 5\frac{1}{4}$). Seven volumes. 2s. each volume.

Book I.	Text, pp. 36.	Notes, 38.	Introduction, 32.	Maps, 2.
Book II.	,, ,, 20.	,, 20.	,, 32.	,, 4.
Book III.	,, ,, 16.	,, 16.	,, 32.	,, 1.
Book IV.	,, ,, 22.	,, 28.	,, 32.	,, 2.
Book V.	,, ,, 34.	,, 34.	,, 32.	,, 2.
Book VI.	,, ,, 24.	,, 26.	,, 32.	,, 1.
Book VII.	,, ,, 54.	,, 46.	,, 32.	,, 5.

CAESAR'S CAMPAIGNS IN BRITAIN, being The Gallic War, Books IV (20–38) and V, edited by T. Rice Holmes. With a map, illustrations, and a vocabulary. 1s. 6d.

CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR, a complete Vocabulary compiled by G. G. Loane. 1915. Crown 8vo ($7\frac{1}{2} \times 5\frac{1}{4}$), pp. 62. 1s. 6d.

OVID: ELEGIAC POEMS, edited by J. W. E. Pearce. 1914. Crown 8vo ($7\frac{1}{2} \times 5\frac{1}{4}$). Three volumes. 2s. each volume.

Early Poems. Text, pp. 86. Notes, pp. 86. Introduction, pp. 18.

The Roman Calendar. Text, pp. 90. Notes, pp. 110. Introduction, pp. 24.

Letters from Exile. Text, pp. 76. Notes, pp. 100. Introduction, pp. 18.

CAESAR IN BRITAIN

C. IULI CAESARIS DE BELLO GALLICO COMMENTARII QUARTUS (xx–xxxviii) ET QUINTUS

EDITED BY

T. RICE HOLMES, Hon. Litt.D. (Dublin)

WITH A VOCABULARY COMPILED BY

GEORGE G. LOANE, M.A.

A MASTER AT ST. PAUL'S SCHOOL

OXFORD

AT THE CLARENDON PRESS

LONDON EDINBURGH GLASGOW NEW YORK

TORONTO MELBOURNE AND BOMBAY

HUMPHREY MILFORD

1916

BY THE SAME AUTHOR

Caesar's Conquest of Gaul. Second edition revised throughout and largely rewritten. 1911. 8vo, pp. xl + 872, with a map and 8 plans. 24*s.* net.

Ancient Britain and the Invasions of Julius Caesar. 1907. 8vo, pp. xvi + 764, with 3 maps and 44 illustrations. 21*s.* net.

Caesar: De Bello Gallico I–VII (with Hirtius, *Comm.* VIII). 1914. 8vo, pp. xlvi + 462, with 11 maps and 9 plans. 8*s.* 6*d.* net.

Caesar: The Gallic War. 1914. Crown 8vo. Seven volumes. 2*s.* each volume. New Clarendon Press Series (under the General Editorship of the Rev. A. E. Hillard, Head Master of St. Paul's School).

NOTE

This edition of Caesar's account of his campaigns in Britain is based upon Dr. Rice Holmes's edition of the *Commentaries*, published in 1914 in seven volumes, also in a single volume.

For Dr. Rice Holmes's general introductions reference should be made to this edition, and for his discussion of historical questions to his larger works, *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul*, 2nd edition, and his *Ancient Britain*—especially chapters 6 and 7.

Dr. Holmes has not been able to read the proof-sheets of this edition.

CONTENTS

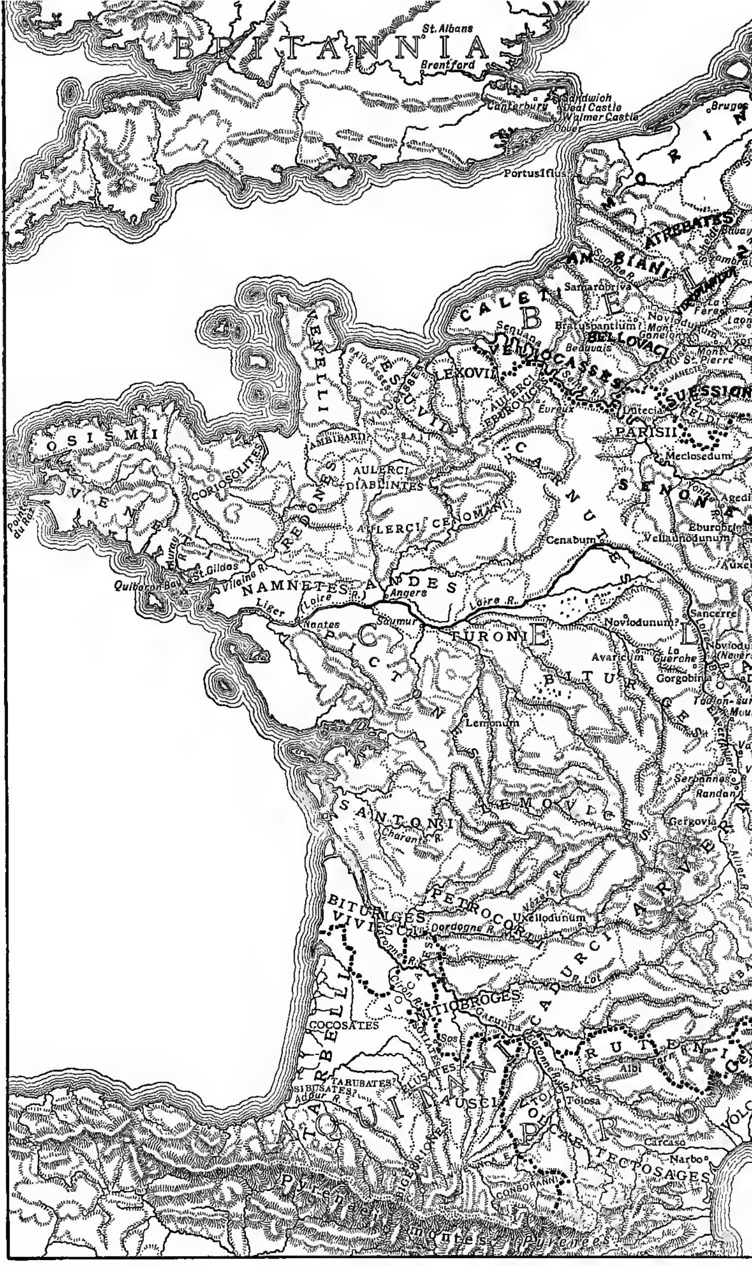
ILLUSTRATIONS

AN EPITOME OF THE PRECEDING COMMENTARIES

This book cannot be properly understood without some knowledge of the principal events described in the preceding *Commentaries*. In 58 B.C. the warlike Helvetii emigrated from Switzerland, accompanied by their allies, the Boi, Latobrigi, Rauraci, and Tulingi, with the intention of establishing themselves in the country of the Santoni in Western Gaul. Caesar, who already had four legions, resolved to expel them, and raised two more legions in Cisalpine Gaul. About one-fourth of the emigrants were destroyed or dispersed while they were trying to cross the Saône a little above Lyons. The rest were followed by Caesar, who ultimately defeated them near Toulon-sur-Arroux, and compelled all the survivors except the Boi, whom the Aedui, with his consent, welcomed as dependants, to return to Switzerland. A considerable number of the Gauls, influenced by the powerful Aeduan chieftain, Dumnorix, had favoured the enterprise of the Helvetii: but most of the tribal leaders were glad to be rid of such intruders; and they were so impressed by Caesar's victory that deputies from many of the central states came to congratulate him, and virtually acknowledged him as the master of Gaul. They were anxious to be quit also of the German king, Ariovistus, who in 71 B.C. had invaded the country with fifteen thousand men; and Caesar, for his part, determined to expel him from Gaul if he could not secure guarantees for his good behaviour. After fruitless negotiations Caesar defeated him in the plain of Alsace and drove the remnant of his army across the Rhine. Thus Gaul and Rome were relieved from the presence of two

AN EPITOME OF THE PRECEDING COMMENTARIES

This book cannot be properly understood without some knowledge of the principal events described in the preceding *Commentaries.* In 58 B.C. the warlike Helvetii emigrated from Switzerland, accompanied by their allies, the Boi, Latobrigi, Rauraci, and Tulingi, with the intention of establishing themselves in the country of the Santoni in Western Gaul. Caesar, who already had four legions, resolved to expel them, and raised two more legions in Cisalpine Gaul. About one-fourth of the emigrants were destroyed or dispersed while they were trying to cross the Saône a little above Lyons. The rest were followed by Caesar, who ultimately defeated them near Toulon-sur-Arroux, and compelled all the survivors except the Boi, whom the Aedui, with his consent, welcomed as dependants, to return to Switzerland. A considerable number of the Gauls, influenced by the powerful Aeduan chieftain, Dumnorix, had favoured the enterprise of the Helvetii: but most of the tribal leaders were glad to be rid of such intruders; and they were so impressed by Caesar's victory that deputies from many of the central states came to congratulate him, and virtually acknowledged him as the master of Gaul. They were anxious to be quit also of the German king, Ariovistus, who in 71 B.C. had invaded the country with fifteen thousand men; and Caesar, for his part, determined to expel him from Gaul if he could not secure guarantees for his good behaviour. After fruitless negotiations Caesar defeated him in the plain of Alsace and drove the remnant of his army across the Rhine. Thus Gaul and Rome were relieved from the presence of two



BRITANNIA
St. Albans
Brentford
Sandwich
Deal Castle
Canterbury
Walmer Castle
Dover
Portus Itius
Bruges
ATREBATES
AMBIANI
Somme R.
Samarobriva
CALETI
BELLOVACI
Bratuspantium
Beauvais
Mont Ganelon
Sequana
VELIOCASSES
LEXOVII
AULERCI EBUROVICES
Evreux
SUESSIONES
MELDI
Lutecia
PARISII
Meclosedum
VENELLI
BAIOCASSES
ESUVII
AMBIBARI?
SAII
OSISMI
CORIOSOLITES
REDONES
AULERCI DIABLINTES
AULERCI CENOMANI
CARNUTES
SENONES
Yonne R.
Agedincum
Eburobriga
Vellaunodunum
Cenabum
Auxerre
Pointe du Raz
VENETI
St. Gildas
Vilaine R.
Quiberon Bay
NAMNETES
ANDES
Angers
Liger
Loire R.
Nantes
Saumur
TURONI
Noviodunum?
Sancerre
PICTONES
BITURIGES
Avaricum
La Guerche
Gorgobina
BOII
Noviodunum (Nevers)
Lemonum
Serbannes
Randan
LEMOVICES
Gergovia
SANTONI
Charente R.
ARVERNI
Allier R.
BITURIGES VIVISCI
PETROCORII
Vézère R.
Uxellodunum
Dordogne R.
Garonne R.
CADURCI
R. Lot
BOII
Ciron R.
NITIOBROGES
Garumna
COCOSATES
Sos
RUTENI
Albi
Tarn
ELUSATES
SIBUSATES?
TARUSATES?
Adour R.
AUSCI
Tolosa
TARBELLI
AQUITANI
PROVINCIA
Carcaso
Narbo
TECTOSAGES
CONSORANNI
BIGERRIONES
Pyrenaei montes
Pyrenees

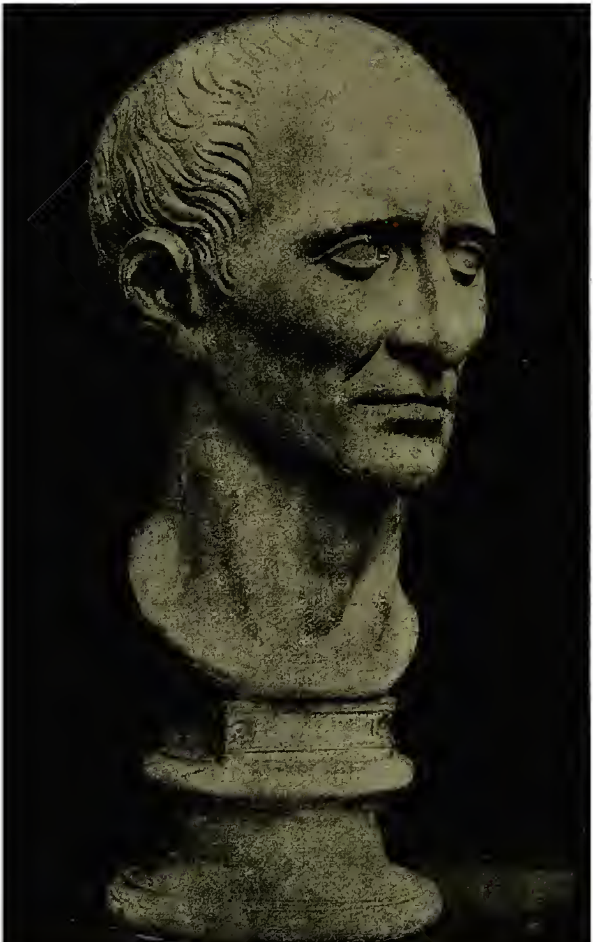
formidable invaders. The other permanent results of these two campaigns were that the Aedui, who had been humbled by Ariovistus, were restored to the position they had formerly held as the leading state of the Celtae; that Diviciacus, Dumnorix's brother and Caesar's subservient tool, regained his former influence; and that Caesar gained possession of the fortress of Vesontio (Besançon), from which he could advance in any direction and to which, in case of need, he could retreat. Instead of withdrawing his legions into the Roman Province, Caesar quartered them for the winter in the country of the Sequani—probably in Vesontio—and thus made it evident that his purpose was nothing less than the conquest of Gaul.

During the winter Caesar, who was in Northern Italy (see the second note on 1, § 1), was informed that the Belgae, fearing that he would first conquer the rest of Gaul and then conquer them, were conspiring against him. He determined to take the initiative, raised two new legions in Cisalpine Gaul, and reached the Belgic frontier early in the summer of 57 B. C., before the preparations of the confederates were complete. One important tribe, the Remi, who had hitherto been under the overlordship of their neighbours, the Suessiones, saw a chance of shaking off the yoke, and, instead of joining the league, placed themselves under the protection of Caesar. He first encountered the Belgic host on the river Aisne, north of which he entrenched himself. Their supplies were soon exhausted, and, after trying in vain to turn Caesar's rear, they were forced to disperse. He then mastered them in detail, the Suessiones, Bellovaci, and Ambiani surrendering one after the other. The Nervii, supported by the Atrebates and the Viromandui, resolved, however, to resist, and Caesar only defeated them after a desperate battle on the left bank of the upper Sambre, near Maubeuge. He then marched against the Atuatuci, who

concentrated in their principal stronghold, probably Mont Falhize, about midway between Namur and Liége. After standing a siege for a few days they surrendered, but subsequently made a treacherous sortie, which was repulsed; and as a punishment the survivors, numbering 53,000, were sold into slavery. The fame which Caesar acquired by this campaign was so great that the Ubii, a German tribe, who inhabited the country extending from the neighbourhood of Bonn to the neighbourhood of Coblenz, voluntarily submitted. A legion under Publius Crassus had already been sent to receive the submission of the maritime tribes of Normandy and Brittany. Probably Caesar already contemplated invading Britain and wished to acquire control over the Gallic fleets in order that he might safely cross the Channel. The tribes professed to submit; and Caesar, supported by the influence of the Aedui among the Celtae and of the Remi among the Belgae, was now in appearance master of the whole of Gaul. But appearances were delusive. The Veneti, the principal marine carriers of Gaul, had heard that Caesar intended to invade Britain, and were afraid that he would interfere with their trade. They and the other maritime tribes north of the Loire rebelled and collected a large fleet. Caesar, who was in Italy, sent orders to his officers to have a flotilla of galleys built in the ports at the mouth of the Loire and to impress oarsmen from the Province.
56 B.C. On returning to Gaul he spent the greater part of the summer in besieging the forts of the Veneti, but found that he could not break their power so long as they remained masters of the sea. At length his admiral destroyed the allied fleet in Quiberon Bay; and in order to teach the Gauls that it was dangerous to rebel, Caesar put to death the Venetian council and sold the tribesmen, or all whom he could catch, into slavery. Meanwhile the northern allies of the Veneti were crushed by Titurius Sabinus, one of his generals, in the peninsula

of the Cotentin; and Crassus conducted a successful campaign in Aquitania. This expedition was unprovoked; but Caesar apparently feared that the Aquitanians might abet the resistance of the other Gauls, and in any case he would of course have compelled the former as well as the latter to acknowledge the supremacy of Rome. Two tribes, the Morini and the Menapii, who had supported the Veneti, were still defiant. Their territory, from which Caesar would have to embark for Britain, extended from the neighbourhood of Étaples to the lower Rhine. Caesar attempted to subdue them; but wintry weather came on before he could succeed, and for fear of exposing his troops, he was obliged to desist.

In the following year Gaul was again troubled by 55 B.C.
German invaders. The Usipetes and Tencteri, harassed by the more powerful Suebi, crossed the lower Rhine, occupied the territory of the Menapii, and, attracted by promises of support from certain other tribes, who may have hoped by their aid to oust Caesar, moved southward into the country which now comprises the provinces of Limbourg and Liège and the district of Condroz. Caesar, who had meanwhile returned from Italy to Gaul, marched against them, and after a series of negotiations in which each side endeavoured to outwit the other, surprised them without their leaders, who had rashly placed themselves in his power, massacred their women and children, and drove the helpless multitude in rout to the Rhine, in which those who had escaped the sword were drowned. Only the cavalry, which had separated from the main body and recrossed the river, escaped destruction. After this exploit Caesar, thinking it well to teach the Germans that they too were liable to invasion, bridged the Rhine, received the submission of certain tribes, ravaged the lands of the Sugambri, between the Sieg and the Lippe, in which the fugitive cavalry had found welcome, and then returned to Gaul. The remnant of the summer was devoted to the first of his two invasions of Britain.



CAIUS IULIUS CAESAR
British Museum

C. IULI CAESARIS
DE BELLO GALLICO
COMMENTARIUS QUARTUS
XX–XXXVIII

Exigua parte aestatis reliqua Caesar, etsi in his 20
locis, quod omnis Gallia ad septentriones vergit,
maturae sunt hiemes, tamen in Britanniam proficisci
contendit, quod omnibus fere Gallicis bellis hostibus
nostris inde subministrata auxilia intellegebat, et si 2
tempus anni ad bellum gerendum deficeret, tamen
magno sibi usui fore arbitrabatur, si modo insulam
adisset, genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portus
aditus cognovisset; quae omnia fere Gallis erant
incognita. Neque enim temere praeter mercatores 3
illo adit quisquam, neque his ipsis quicquam praeter
oram maritimam atque eas regiones quae sunt contra
Galliam notum est. Itaque vocatis ad se undique 4
mercatoribus, neque quanta esset insulae magnitudo,
neque quae aut quantae nationes incolerent, neque
quem usum belli haberent aut quibus institutis
uterentur, neque qui essent ad maiorem navium
multitudinem idonei portus reperire poterat.

He resolves to make an expedition to Britain,

Ad haec cognoscenda, prius quam periculum faceret, 21
idoneum esse arbitratus C. Volusenum cum navi longa
praemittit. Huic mandat ut exploratis omnibus rebus 2
ad se quam primum revertatur. Ipse cum omnibus 3
copiis in Morinos proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam traiectus. Huc naves undique 4
ex finitimis regionibus et quam superiore aestate ad
Veneticum bellum fecerat classem iubet convenire.

sends Volusenus to reconnoitre the coast,

and assembles a fleet on the coast of the Morini.

5 Interim, consilio eius cognito et per mercatores perlato
ad Britannos, a compluribus insulae civitatibus ad
eum legati veniunt, qui polliceantur obsides dare atque
6 imperio populi Romani obtemperare. Quibus auditis,
liberaliter pollicitus hortatusque ut in ea sententia
permanerent, eos domum remittit et cum iis una
7 Commium, quem ipse Atrebatibus superatis regem ibi
constituerat, cuius et virtutem et consilium probabat
et quem sibi fidelem esse arbitrabatur cuiusque
auctoritas in his regionibus magni habebatur, mittit.
8 Huic imperat quas possit adeat civitates horteturque
ut populi Romani fidem sequantur seque celeriter eo
9 venturum nuntiet. Volusenus perspectis regionibus
omnibus quantum ei facultatis dari potuit, qui navi
egredi ac se barbaris committere non auderet, V. die
ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspexisset
renuntiat.

Envoys from Britain promise submission.

22 Dum in his locis Caesar navium parandarum causa
moratur, ex magna parte Morinorum ad eum legati
venerunt, qui se de superioris temporis consilio
excusarent, quod homines barbari et nostrae consuetudinis
imperiti bellum populo Romano fecissent, seque
2 ea quae imperasset facturos pollicerentur. Hoc sibi
Caesar satis opportune accidisse arbitratus, quod neque
post tergum hostem relinquere volebat neque belli
gerendi propter anni tempus facultatem habebat neque
has tantularum rerum occupationes Britanniae anteponendas
iudicabat, magnum iis numerum obsidum
3 imperat. Quibus adductis eos in fidem recipit. Navibus
circiter LXXX onerariis coactis contractisque,
quot satis esse ad duas transportandas legiones existimabat,
quod praeterea navium longarum habebat
4 quaestori, legatis praefectisque distribuit. Huc accedebant
XVIII onerariae naves, quae ex eo loco a

Certain clans of the Morini voluntarily submit.

The transports.

milibus passuum VIII vento tenebantur quo minus
in eundem portum venire possent: has equitibus
tribuit. Reliquum exercitum Q. Titurio Sabino et 5
L. Aurunculeio Cottae legatis in Menapios atque in eos
pagos Morinorum a quibus ad eum legati non venerant
ducendum dedit. P. Sulpicium Rufum legatum cum 6
eo praesidio quod satis esse arbitrabatur portum tenere
iussit.

Caesar secures his base.

His constitutis rebus, nactus idoneam ad navigan- 23
dum tempestatem III. fere vigilia solvit equitesque
in ulteriorem portum progredi et naves conscendere
et se sequi iussit. A quibus cum paulo tardius esset 2
administratum, ipse hora diei circiter IIII. cum primis
navibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus
collibus expositas hostium copias armatas conspexit.
Cuius loci haec erat natura atque ita montibus angustis 3
mare continebatur, uti ex locis superioribus in litus
telum adigi posset. Hunc ad egrediendum nequa- 4
quam idoneum locum arbitratus, dum reliquae naves
eo convenirent ad horam nonam in ancoris exspectavit.
Interim legatis tribunisque militum convocatis et 5
quae ex Voluseno cognovisset et quae fieri vellet
ostendit monuitque, ut rei militaris ratio, maximeque
ut maritimae res postularent, ut, cum celerem atque
instabilem motum haberent, ad nutum et ad tempus
omnes res ab iis administrarentur. His dimissis, et 6
ventum et aestum uno tempore nactus secundum,
dato signo et sublatis ancoris, circiter milia passuum
VII ab eo loco progressus aperto ac plano litore
naves constituit.

He sails for Britain, anchors off steep cliffs, and sails on 7 miles to his landing-place.

At barbari, consilio Romanorum cognito praemisso 24
equitatu et essedariis, quo plerumque genere in proe-
liis uti consuerunt, reliquis copiis subsecuti nostros
navibus egredi prohibebant. Erat ob has causas 2

The landing resisted.

summa difficultas, quod naves propter magnitudinem
nisi in alto constitui non poterant, militibus autem,
ignotis locis, impeditis manibus, magno et gravi onere
armorum oppressis simul et de navibus desiliendum
et in fluctibus consistendum et cum hostibus erat
3 pugnandum, cum illi aut ex arido aut paulum in
aquam progressi omnibus membris expeditis, notis-
simis locis, audacter tela coicerent et equos insuefactos
4 incitarent. Quibus rebus nostri perterriti atque huius
omnino generis pugnae imperiti, non eadem alacritate
ac studio quo in pedestribus uti proeliis consuerant
utebantur.

25 Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, naves longas,
quarum et species erat barbaris inusitatior et motus
ad usum expeditior, paulum removeri ab onerariis
navibus et remis incitari et ad latus apertum hostium
constitui atque inde fundis, sagittis, tormentis hostes
propelli ac submoveri iussit; quae res magno usui
2 nostris fuit. Nam et navium figura et remorum motu
et inusitato genere tormentorum permoti barbari con-
3 stiterunt ac paulum modo pedem rettulerunt. Atque
nostris militibus cunctantibus, maxime propter altitu-
dinem maris, qui X. legionis aquilam ferebat, obtesta-
tus deos, ut ea res legioni feliciter eveniret, 'desilite',
inquit, 'milites, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prodere;
ego certe meum rei publicae atque imperatori officium
4 praestitero.' Hoc cum voce magna dixisset, se ex
navi proiecit atque in hostes aquilam ferre coepit.
5 Tum nostri cohortati inter se, ne tantum dedecus
6 admitteretur, universi ex navi desiluerunt. Hos item
ex proximis primi navibus cum conspexissent, subse-
cuti hostibus adpropinquaverunt.

26 Pugnatum est ab utrisque acriter. Nostri tamen,
quod neque ordines servare neque firmiter insistere

neque signa subsequi poterant atque alius alia ex navi
quibuscumque signis occurrerat se adgregabat, ma-
gnopere perturbabantur; hostes vero, notis omnibus 2
vadis, ubi ex litore aliquos singulares ex navi egre-
dientes conspexerant, incitatis equis impeditos adorie-
bantur, plures paucos circumsistebant, alii ab latere 3
aperto in universos tela coiciebant. Quod cum anim- 4
advertisset Caesar, scaphas longarum navium, item
speculatoria navigia militibus compleri iussit, et quos
laborantes conspexerat, his subsidia submittebat. Nostri, 5
simul in arido constiterunt, suis omnibus consecutis, in
hostes impetum fecerunt atque eos in fugam dederunt;
neque longius prosequi potuerunt, quod equites cursum
tenere atque insulam capere non potuerant. Hoc unum
ad pristinam fortunam Caesari defuit.

The beaten Britons sue for peace.

Hostes proelio superati, simul atque se ex fuga **27**
receperunt, statim ad Caesarem legatos de pace mise-
runt; obsides sese daturos quaeque imperasset facturos
polliciti sunt. Una cum his legatis Commius Atrebas 2
venit, quem supra demonstraveram a Caesare in
Britanniam praemissum. Hunc illi e navi egressum, 3
cum ad eos oratoris modo Caesaris mandata deferret,
comprehenderant atque in vincula coniecerant; tum 4
proelio facto remiserunt et in petenda pace eius rei
culpam in multitudinem contulerunt et propter impru-
dentiam ut ignosceretur petiverunt. Caesar questus 5
quod, cum ultro in continentem legatis missis pacem
ab se petissent, bellum sine causa intulissent, ignoscere
⟨se⟩ imprudentiae dixit obsidesque imperavit; quorum 6
illi partem statim dederunt, partem ex longinquioribus
locis arcessitam paucis diebus sese daturos dixerunt.
Interea suos in agros remigrare iusserunt, principes- 7
que undique convenire et se civitatesque suas Caesari
commendare coeperunt.

The cavalry transports dispersed by a gale.

28 His rebus pace confirmata, post diem quartum quam
est in Britanniam ventum naves XVIII, de quibus
supra demonstratum est, quae equites sustulerant, ex
2 superiore portu leni vento solverunt. Quae cum ad-
propinquarent Britanniae et ex castris viderentur,
tanta tempestas subito coorta est ut nulla earum
cursum tenere posset, sed aliae eodem unde erant
profectae referrentur, aliae ad inferiorem partem
insulae, quae est propius solis occasum, magno suo
3 cum periculo deicerentur; quae tamen ancoris iactis
cum fluctibus complerentur, necessario adversa nocte
in altum provectae continentem petierunt.

Many of the other ships wrecked.

29 Eadem nocte accidit ut esset luna plena, qui dies
maritimos aestus maximos in Oceano efficere consuevit,
2 nostrisque id erat incognitum. Ita uno tempore et
longas naves, [quibus Caesar exercitum transportan-
dum curaverat,] quas Caesar in aridum subduxerat,
aestus complebat, et onerarias, quae ad ancoras erant
deligatae, tempestas adflictabat, neque ulla nostris
facultas aut administrandi aut auxiliandi dabatur.
3 Compluribus navibus fractis, reliquae cum essent
funibus, ancoris reliquisque armamentis amissis ad
navigandum inutiles, magna, id quod necesse erat
4 accidere, totius exercitus perturbatio facta est. Neque
enim naves erant aliae quibus reportari possent, et
omnia deerant quae ad reficiendas naves erant usui,
et, quod omnibus constabat hiemari in Gallia oportere,
frumentum in his locis in hiemem provisum non erat.

The Britons prepare to renew hostilities.

30 Quibus rebus cognitis, principes Britanniae, qui post proelium ad Caesarem convenerant, inter se conlocuti, cum et equites et naves et frumentum Romanis deesse intellegerent et paucitatem militum ex castrorum exiguitate cognoscerent, quae hoc erant etiam angustiora quod sine impedimentis Caesar legiones transporta-

verat, optimum factu esse duxerunt rebellione facta 2
frumento commeatuque nostros prohibere et rem in
hiemem producere, quod his superatis aut reditu inter-
clusis neminem postea belli inferendi causa in Britan-
niam transiturum confidebant. Itaque rursus coniu-
ratione facta paulatim ex castris discedere et suos
clam ex agris deducere coeperunt.

Caesar repairs most of his ships.

At Caesar, etsi nondum eorum consilia cognoverat, **31**
tamen et ex eventu navium suarum et ex eo quod
obsides dare intermiserant fore id quod accidit sus-
picabatur. Itaque ad omnes casus subsidia com- 2
parabat. Nam et frumentum ex agris cotidie in
castra conferebat et, quae gravissime adflictae erant
naves, earum materia atque aere ad reliquas re-
ficiendas utebatur et quae ad eas res erant usui ex
continenti comportari iubebat. Itaque, cum summo 3
studio a militibus administraretur, XII navibus
amissis, reliquis ut navigari ⟨satis⟩ commode posset
effecit.

The 7th legion attacked by cavalry and charioteers.

Dum ea geruntur, legione ex consuetudine una **32**
frumentatum missa, quae appellabatur VII., neque
ulla ad id tempus belli suspicione interposita, cum
pars hominum in agris remaneret, pars etiam in castra
ventitaret, ii qui pro portis castrorum in statione erant
Caesari nuntiaverunt pulverem maiorem quam consue-
tudo ferret in ea parte videri quam in partem legio
iter fecisset. Caesar—id quod erat—suspicatus ali- 2
quid novi a barbaris initum consilii, cohortes quae
in statione erant secum in eam partem proficisci, ex
reliquis duas in stationem succedere, reliquas armari
et confestim se subsequi iussit. Cum paulo longius 3
a castris processisset, suos ab hostibus premi atque
aegre sustinere et conferta legione ex omnibus par-
tibus tela coici animadvertit. Nam quod omni ex 4

reliquis partibus demesso frumento pars una erat
reliqua, suspicati hostes huc nostros esse venturos
5 noctu in silvis delituerant; tum dispersos depositis
armis in metendo occupatos subito adorti paucis interfectis reliquos incertis ordinibus perturbaverant, simul equitatu atque essedis circumdederant.

Tactics and skill of the charioteers.

33 Genus hoc est ex essedis pugnae. Primo per omnes partes perequitant et tela coiciunt atque ipso terrore equorum et strepitu rotarum ordines plerumque perturbant, et cum se inter equitum turmas insinuaverunt, ex essedis desiliunt et pedibus proeliantur.
2 Aurigae interim paulatim ex proelio excedunt atque ita currus conlocant ut, si illi a multitudine hostium premantur, expeditum ad suos receptum habeant.
3 Ita mobilitatem equitum, stabilitatem peditum in proeliis praestant, ac tantum usu cotidiano et exercitatione efficiunt uti in declivi ac praecipiti loco incitatos equos sustinere et brevi moderari ac flectere et per temonem percurrere et in iugo insistere et se inde in currus citissime recipere consuerint.

Caesar rescues the 7th legion.

34 Quibus rebus perturbatis nostris [novitate pugnae] tempore opportunissimo Caesar auxilium tulit: namque eius adventu hostes constiterunt, nostri se ex timore
2 receperunt. Quo facto, ad lacessendum hostem et committendum proelium alienum esse tempus arbitratus suo se loco continuit et brevi tempore inter-
3 misso in castra legiones reduxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostris omnibus occupatis qui erant in agris reliqui
4 discesserunt. Secutae sunt continuos complures dies tempestates, quae et nostros in castris continerent et

The Britons prepare for a final effort.

5 hostem a pugna prohiberent. Interim barbari nuntios in omnes partes dimiserunt paucitatemque nostrorum militum suis praedicaverunt et quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum sui liberandi facultas

daretur, si Romanos castris expulissent, demonstraverunt. His rebus celeriter magna multitudine peditatus equitatusque coacta ad castra venerunt.

Their defeat and submission.

Caesar, etsi idem quod superioribus diebus acciderat 35
fore videbat, ut, si essent hostes pulsi, celeritate periculum effugerent, tamen nactus equites circiter XXX,
quos Commius Atrebas, de quo ante dictum est, secum
transportaverat. legiones in acie pro castris constituit.
Commisso proelio diutius nostrorum militum impetum 2
hostes ferre non potuerunt ac terga verterunt.
Quos tanto spatio secuti quantum cursu et viribus 3
efficere potuerunt, complures ex iis occiderunt, deinde
omnibus longe lateque aedificiis incensis se in castra
receperunt.

Caesar and his army return to Gaul.

Eodem die legati ab hostibus missi ad Caesarem 36
de pace venerunt. His Caesar numerum obsidum 2
quem ante imperaverat duplicavit eosque in continentem adduci iussit, quod propinqua die aequinoctii
infirmis navibus hiemi navigationem subiciendam non
existimabat. Ipse idoneam tempestatem nactus paulo 3
post mediam noctem naves solvit, quae omnes inco- 4
lumes ad continentem pervenerunt; sed ex iis onerariae duae eosdem portus quos reliquae capere non
potuerunt et paulo infra delatae sunt.

Two transports fail to reach harbour: the troops which they carried attacked by the Morini, who are repulsed.

Quibus ex navibus cum essent expositi milites cir- 37
citer CCC atque in castra contenderent. Morini, quos
Caesar in Britanniam proficiscens pacatos reliquerat,
spe praedae adducti primo non ita magno suorum
numero circumsteterunt ac, si sese interfici nollent,
arma ponere iusserunt. Cum illi orbe facto sese 2
defenderent, celeriter ad clamorem hominum circiter
milia VI convenerunt. Qua re nuntiata, Caesar omnem ex castris equitatum suis auxilio misit. Interim 3
nostri milites impetum hostium sustinuerunt atque

amplius horis IIII fortissime pugnaverunt et paucis
4 vulneribus acceptis complures ex iis occiderunt. Postea
vero quam equitatus noster in conspectum venit, hostes
abiectis armis terga verterunt magnusque eorum nu-
merus est occisus.

Punishment of the Morini and Menapii: thanksgiving service at Rome.

38 Caesar postero die T Labienum legatum cum iis
legionibus quas ex Britannia reduxerat in Morinos
2 qui rebellionem feccrant misit. Qui cum propter
siccitates paludum quo se rcciperent non haberent,
quo perfugio superiore anno erant usi, omnes fere in
3 potestatem Labieni venerunt. At Q. Titurius et
L. Cotta legati, qui in Menapiorum fines legiones
duxerant, omnibus eorum agris vastatis, frumentis
succisis, aedificiis incensis, quod Menapii se omnes in
densissimas silvas abdiderant, se ad Caesarem rece-
4 perunt. Caesar in Belgis omnium legionum hiberna
constituit. Eo duae omnino civitates ex Britannia
5 obsides miserunt, reliquae neglexerunt. His rebus
gestis ex litteris Caesaris dierum XX supplicatio a
senatu decreta est.

C. IULI CAESARIS

DE BELLO GALLICO

COMMENTARIUS QUINTUS

Ships designed for a second invasion of Britain.

L. Domitio, Ap. Claudio consulibus discedens ab **1**
hibernis Caesar in Italiam, ut quotannis facere con-
suerat, legatis imperat, quos legionibus praefecerat,
uti quam plurimas possint hieme naves aedificandas
veteresque reficiendas curent. Earum modum for- 2
mamque demonstrat. Ad celeritatem onerandi sub-
ductionisque paulo facit humiliores quam quibus in
nostro mari uti consuevimus, atque id eo magis quod
propter crebras commutationes aestuum minus magnos
ibi fluctus fieri cognoverat; ad onera ac multitudinem
iumentorum transportandam paulo latiores quam
quibus in reliquis utimur maribus. Has omnes actua- 3
rias imperat fieri, quam ad rem multum humilitas
adiuvat. Ea quae sunt usui ad armandas naves ex 4
Hispania adportari iubet. Ipse conventibus Galliae 5
citerioris peractis in Illyricum proficiscitur, quod a
Pirustis finitimam partem provinciae incursionibus
vastari audiebat. Eo cum venisset, civitatibus milites 6
imperat certumque in locum convenire iubet. Qua 7
re nuntiata Pirustae legatos ad eum mittunt, qui
doceant nihil earum rerum publico factum consilio;
seseque paratos esse demonstrant omnibus rationibus
de iniuriis satis facere. Percepta oratione eorum 8
Caesar obsides imperat eosque ad certam diem adduci
iubet; nisi ita fecerint, sese bello civitatem persecu-
turum demonstrat. Iis ad diem adductis, ut impera- 9

Caesar in Illyricum.

verat, arbitros inter civitates dat, qui litem aestiment
poenamque constituant.

54 B.C. The ships assemble in the Itian harbour.

2 His confectis rebus conventibusque peractis, in
citeriorem Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum
2 proficiscitur. Eo cum venisset, circumitis omnibus
hibernis, singulari militum studio in summa omnium
rerum inopia circiter DC eius generis cuius supra
demonstravimus naves et longas XXVIII invenit in-
structas neque multum abesse ab eo quin paucis
3 diebus deduci possint. Conlaudatis militibus atque
iis qui negotio praefuerant, quid fieri velit ostendit
atque omnes ad portum Itium convenire iubet, quo
ex portu commodissimum in Britanniam traiectum
esse cognoverat, circiter milium passuum XXX
a continenti: huic rei quod satis esse visum est

Caesar visits the Treveri.

4 militum relinquit. Ipse cum legionibus expeditis
IIII et equitibus DCCC in fines Treverorum profici-
scitur, quod hi neque ad concilia veniebant neque
imperio parebant Germanosque Transrhenanos solli-
citare dicebantur.

Cingetorix and Indutiomarus.

3 Haec civitas longe plurimum totius Galliae equi-
tatu valet magnasque habet copias peditum Rhenum-
2 que, ut supra demonstravimus, tangit. In ea civitate
duo de principatu inter se contendebant, Indutiomarus
3 et Cingetorix; ex quibus alter, simul atque de Caesaris
legionumque adventu cognitum est, ad eum venit, se
suosque omnes in officio futuros neque ab amicitia
populi Romani defecturos confirmavit quaeque in
4 Treveris gererentur ostendit. At Indutiomarus equi-
tatum peditatumque cogere, iisque qui per aetatem
in armis esse non poterant in silvam Arduennam
abditis, quae ingenti magnitudine per medios fines
Treverorum a flumine Rheno ad initium Remorum
5 pertinet, bellum parare instituit; sed postea quam

non nulli principes ex ea civitate et familiaritate
Cingetorigis adducti et adventu nostri exercitus per-
territi ad Caesarem venerunt et de suis privatis rebus
ab eo petere coeperunt, quoniam civitati consulere
non possent, veritus ne ab omnibus desereretur,
legatos ad Caesarem mittit: sese idcirco ab suis 6
discedere atque ad eum venire noluisse quo facilius
civitatem in officio contineret, ne omnis nobilitatis
discessu plebs propter imprudentiam laberetur; itaque 7
civitatem in sua potestate esse, seque, si Caesar per-
mitteret, ad eum in castra venturum et suas civitatis-
que fortunas eius fidei permissurum.

Caesar, etsi intellegebat qua de causa ea dicerentur **4**
quaeque eum res ab instituto consilio deterreret,
tamen, ne aestatem in Treveris consumere cogeretur
omnibus rebus ad Britannicum bellum comparatis,
Indutiomarum ad se cum CC obsidibus venire iussit.
His adductis, in iis filio propinquisque eius omnibus, 2
quos nominatim evocaverat, consolatus Indutiomarum
hortatusque est uti in officio maneret; nihilo tamen 3
setius principibus Treverorum ad se convocatis hos
singillatim Cingetorigi conciliavit; quod cum merito
eius ab se fieri intellegebat, tum magni interesse
arbitrabatur eius auctoritatem inter suos quam plu-
rimum valere cuius tam egregiam in se voluntatem
perspexisset. Id factum graviter tulit Indutiomarus, 4
suam gratiam inter suos minui, et qui iam ante ini-
mico in nos animo fuisset multo gravius hoc dolore
exarsit.

His rebus constitutis Caesar ad portum Itium cum **5**
legionibus pervenit. Ibi cognoscit LX naves, quae 2
in Meldis factae erant, tempestate reiectas cursum
tenere non potuisse atque eodem, unde erant profectae,
revertisse; reliquas paratas ad navigandum atque

Caesar repairs to the Itian harbour.

3 omnibus rebus instructas iuvenit. Eodem equitatus
totius Galliae convenit, numero milia IIII, principes-
4 que ex omnibus civitatibus; ex quibus perpaucos,
quorum in se fidem perspexerat, relinquere in Gallia,
reliquos obsidum loco secum ducere decreverat, quod,
cum ipse abesset, motum Galliae verebatur.

Intrigues of Dumnorix.

6 Erat una cum ceteris Dumnorix Haeduus, de quo
ante a nobis dictum est. Hunc secum habere in
primis constituerat, quod eum cupidum rerum no-
varum, cupidum imperii, magni animi, magnae inter
2 Gallos auctoritatis cognoverat. Accedebat huc quod
in concilio Haeduorum Dumnorix dixerat sibi a Cae-
sare regnum civitatis deferri; quod dictum Haedui
graviter ferebant neque recusandi aut deprecandi
causa legatos ad Caesarem mittere audebant. Id
3 factum ex suis hospitibus Caesar cognoverat. Ille
omnibus primo precibus petere contendit ut in Gallia
relinqueretur, partim quod insuetus navigandi mare
timeret, partim quod religionibus impediri sese diceret.
4 Postea quam id obstinate sibi negari vidit, omni spe
impetrandi adempta, principes Galliae sollicitare,
sevocare singulos hortarique coepit ut in continenti
5 remanerent; metu territare: non sine causa fieri, ut
Gallia omni nobilitate spoliaretur; id esse consilium
Caesaris ut quos in conspectu Galliae interficere
vereretur hos omnes in Britanniam traductos necaret;
6 fidem reliquis interponere, ius iurandum poscere ut
quod esse ex usu Galliae intellexissent communi con-
silio administrarent. Haec a compluribus ad Caesarem
deferebantur.

The fleet weather-bound.

7 Qua re cognita Caesar, quod tantum civitati Hae-
duae dignitatis tribuebat, coercendum atque deter-
rendum, quibuscumque rebus posset, Dumnorigem
2 statuebat ⟨et,⟩ quod longius eius amentiam progredi

videbat, prospiciendum ne quid sibi ac rei publicae
nocere posset. Itaque dies circiter XXV in eo loco 3
commoratus, quod Corus ventus navigationem im-
pediebat, qui magnam partem omnis temporis in his
locis flare consuevit, dabat operam ut in officio Dum-
norigem contineret, nihilo tamen setius omnia eius
consilia cognosceret; tandem idoneam nactus tem- 4
pestatem milites equitesque conscendere naves iubet.

The fate of Dumnorix.

At omnium animis impeditis Dumnorix cum equitibus 5
Haeduorum a castris insciente Caesare domum dis-
cedere coepit. Qua re nuntiata Caesar, intermissa 6
profectione atque omnibus rebus postpositis, magnam
partem equitatus ad eum insequendum mittit retrahi-
que imperat; si vim faciat neque pareat, interfici 7
iubet, nihil hunc se absente pro sano facturum arbi-
tratus qui praesentis imperium neglexisset. Ille enim 8
revocatus resistere ac se manu defendere suorumque
fidem implorare coepit, saepe clamitans liberum se
liberaeque esse civitatis. Illi, ut erat imperatum, 9
circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt; at equites
Haedui ad Caesarem omnes revertuntur.

The voyage to Britain.

His rebus gestis Labieno in continenti cum III **8**
legionibus et equitum milibus duobus relicto, ut
portus tueretur et rei frumentariae provideret quae-
que in Gallia gererentur cognosceret consiliumque
pro tempore et pro re caperet, ipse cum V legionibus 2
et pari numero equitum, quem in continenti relin-
quebat, ad solis occasum naves solvit. Et leni Africo
provectus media circiter nocte vento intermisso cur-
sum non tenuit et longius delatus aestu orta luce
sub sinistra Britanniam relictam conspexit. Tum 3
rursus aestus commutationem secutus remis conten-
dit ut eam partem insulae caperet qua optimum esse
egressum superiore aestate cognoverat. Qua in re 4



SOUTH EASTERN BRITAIN

English Miles

0 10 20 30 40 50

The outlines of the estuary between Thanet and the mainland, and of Romney Marsh are intended to show approximately the high-water mark of spring tides. (A.B., *p. XVI.*)

Emery Walker Ltd

admodum fuit militum virtus laudanda, qui vectoriis
gravibusque navigiis non intermisso remigandi labore
longarum navium cursum adaequaverint. Accessum 5
est ad Britanniam omnibus navibus meridiano fere
tempore, neque in eo loco hostis est visus; sed, ut 6
postea Caesar ex captivis cognovit, cum magnae
manus eo convenissent, multitudine navium perter-
ritae, quae cum annotinis privatisque, quas sui quisque
commodi causa fecerat, amplius DCCC uno erant
visae tempore, a litore discesserant ac se in superiora
loca abdiderant.

Caesar marches inland, defeats the Britons, and captures a stronghold.

Caesar exposito exercitu et loco castris idoneo **9**
capto, ubi ex captivis cognovit quo in loco hostium
copiae consedissent, cohortibus X ad mare relictis et
equitibus CCC, qui praesidio navibus essent, de tertia
vigilia ad hostes contendit, eo minus veritus navibus
quod in litore molli atque aperto deligatas ad ancoras
relinquebat. Ei praesidio navibusque Q. Atrium
praefecit. Ipse noctu progressus milia passuum cir- 2
citer XII hostium copias conspicatus est. Illi equi- 3
tatu atque essedis ad flumen progressi ex loco supe-
riore nostros prohibere et proelium committere
coeperunt. Repulsi ab equitatu se in silvas abdiderunt 4
locum nacti egregie et natura et opere munitum,
quem domestici belli, ut videbatur, causa iam ante
praeparaverant: nam crebris arboribus succisis omnes 5
introitus erant praeclusi. Ipsi ex silvis rari pro- 6
pugnabant nostrosque intra munitiones ingredi pro-
hibebant. At milites legionis VII., testudine facta et 7
aggere ad munitiones adiecto, locum ceperunt eosque
ex silvis expulerunt paucis vulneribus acceptis. Sed 8
eos fugientes longius Caesar prosequi vetuit, et quod
loci naturam ignorabat et quod magna parte diei con-
sumpta munitioni castrorum tempus relinqui volebat.

The second shipwreck.

10 Postridie eius diei mane tripertito milites equitesque
in expeditionem misit, ut eos qui fugerant perseque-
2 rentur. His aliquantum itineris progressis, cum iam
extremi essent in prospectu, equites a Q. Atrio ad
Caesarem venerunt, qui nuntiarent superiore nocte
maxima coorta tempestate prope omnes naves
adflictas atque in litus eiectas esse, quod neque
ancorae funesque subsisterent neque nautae guber-
3 natoresque vim tempestatis pati possent; itaque
ex eo concursu navium magnum esse incommodum
acceptum.

Caesar returns to the coast, repairs damage, constructs a naval camp, and marches back inland.

11 His rebus cognitis Caesar legiones equitatumque
revocari [atque in itinere resistere] iubet, ipse ad
2 naves revertitur; eadem fere quae ex nuntiis [litteris-
que] cognoverat coram perspicit, sic ut amissis cir-
citer XL navibus reliquae tamen refici posse magno
3 negotio viderentur. Itaque ex legionibus fabros
4 deligit et ex continenti alios arcessi iubet; Labieno
scribit ut quam plurimas possit iis legionibus quae
5 sint apud eum naves instituat. Ipse, etsi res erat
multae operae ac laboris, tamen commodissimum esse
statuit omnes naves subduci et cum castris una
6 munitione coniungi. In his rebus circiter dies X
consumit, ne nocturnis quidem temporibus ad laborem
7 militum intermissis. Subductis navibus castrisque
egregie munitis, easdem copias quas ante praesidio
navibus reliquit, ipse eodem unde redierat proficis-

The Britons reinforced and assembled under Cassivellaunus.

8 citur. Eo cum venisset, maiores iam undique in eum
locum copiae Britannorum convenerant summa imperii
bellique administrandi communi consilio permissa
Cassivellauno, cuius fines a maritimis civitatibus
flumen dividit, quod appellatur Tamesis, a mari cir-
9 citer milia passuum LXXX. Huic superiore tempore
cum reliquis civitatibus continentia bella intercesse-

rant; sed nostro adventu permoti Britanni hunc toti bello imperioque praefecerant.

Ethnical divisions, manners, and customs of the Britons: the British Isles.

[Britanniae pars interior ab iis incolitur quos natos 12
in insula ipsi memoria proditum dicunt, maritima 2
pars ab iis qui praedae ac belli inferendi causa ex
Belgio transierunt—qui omnes fere iis nominibus
civitatum appellantur quibus orti ex civitatibus eo
pervenerunt—et bello inlato ibi remanserunt atque
agros colere coeperunt. Hominum est infinita multi- 3
tudo creberrimaque aedificia fere Gallicis consimilia,
pecoris magnus numerus. Utuntur aut aere aut 4
nummo aureo aut taleis ferreis ad certum pondus
examinatis pro nummo. Nascitur ibi plumbum album 5
in mediterraneis regionibus, in maritimis ferrum, sed
eius exigua est copia; aere utuntur importato. Ma-
teria cuiusque generis ut in Gallia est praeter fagum
atque abietem. Leporem et gallinam et anserem 6
gustare fas non putant; haec tamen alunt animi
voluptatisque causa. Loca sunt temperatiora quam
in Gallia, remissioribus frigoribus.

Insula natura triquetra, cuius unum latus est contra 13
Galliam. Huius lateris alter angulus, qui est ad
Cantium, quo fere omnes ex Gallia naves adpelluntur,
ad orientem solem, inferior ad meridiem spectat.
Hoc latus tenet circiter milia passuum D. Alterum 2
vergit ad Hispaniam atque occidentem solem; qua
ex parte est Hibernia, dimidio minor, ut existi-
matur, quam Britannia, sed pari spatio transmissus
atque ex Gallia est in Britanniam. In hoc medio 3
cursu est insula, quae appellatur Mona; complures
praeterea minores obiectae insulae existimantur,
de quibus insulis non nulli scripserunt dies con-
tinuos XXX sub brumam esse noctem. Nos nihil 4
de eo percontationibus reperiebamus, nisi certis ex

aqua mensuris breviores esse quam in continenti
5 noctes videbamus. Huius est longitudo lateris, ut
6 fert illorum opinio, DCC milium. Tertium est contra
septentriones, cui parti nulla est obiecta terra; sed
eius angulus lateris maxime ad Germaniam spectat.
Hoc milium passuum DCCC in longitudinem esse
7 existimatur. Ita omnis insula est in circuitu vicies
centum milium passuum.

14 Ex his omnibus longe sunt humanissimi qui Can-
tium incolunt, quae regio est maritima omnis, neque
2 multum a Gallica differunt consuetudine. Interiores
plerique frumenta non serunt, sed lacte et carne vivunt
pellibusque sunt vestiti. Omnes vero se Britanni
vitro inficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colorem, atque
3 hoc horridiores sunt in pugna aspectu; capilloque
sunt promisso atque omni parte corporis rasa praeter
4 caput et labrum superius. Uxores habent deni duo-
denique inter se communes, et maxime fratres cum
5 fratribus parentesque cum liberis; sed qui sunt ex
iis nati eorum habentur liberi quo primum virgo
quaeque deducta est.]

Military operations renewed: Caesar embarrassed by the charioteers.

15 Equites hostium essedariique acriter proelio cum
equitatu nostro in itinere conflixerunt, ita tamen ut
nostri omnibus partibus superiores fuerint atque eos
2 in silvas collesque compulerint; sed compluribus in-
terfectis cupidius insecuti non nullos ex suis ami-
3 serunt. At illi, intermisso spatio, imprudentibus
nostris atque occupatis in munitione castrorum, subito
se ex silvis eiecerunt, impetuque in eos facto qui erant
in statione pro castris conlocati, acriter pugnaverunt,
4 duabusque missis subsidio cohortibus a Caesare atque
iis primis legionum duarum, cum hae perexiguo
intermisso loci spatio inter se constitissent, novo
genere pugnae perterritis nostris, per medios auda-

cissime perruperunt seque inde incolumes receperunt.
Eo die Q. Laberius Durus, tribunus militum, inter- 5
ficitur. Illi pluribus submissis cohortibus repelluntur.

Toto hoc in genere pugnae, cum sub oculis omnium **16**
ac pro castris dimicaretur, intellectum est nostros
propter gravitatem armorum, quod neque insequi
cedentes possent neque ab signis discedere auderent,
minus aptos esse ad huius generis hostem, equites 2
autem magno cum periculo proelio dimicare, propterea
quod illi etiam consulto plerumque cederent et, cum
paulum ab legionibus nostros removissent, ex essedis
desilirent et pedibus dispari proelio contenderent.
[Equestris autem proelii ratio et cedentibus et inse- 3
quentibus par atque idem periculum inferebat.] Acce- 4
debat huc ut numquam conferti sed rari magnisque
intervallis proeliarentur stationesque dispositas habe-
rent, atque alios alii deinceps exciperent integrique et
recentes defatigatis succederent.

Trebonius decisively defeats the Britons.

Postero die procul a castris hostes in collibus con- **17**
stiterunt rarique se ostendere et lenius quam pridie
nostros equites proelio lacessere coeperunt. Sed me- 2
ridie, cum Caesar pabulandi causa III legiones atque
omnem equitatum cum C. Trebonio legato misisset,
repente ex omnibus partibus ad pabulatores advo-
laverunt, sic uti ab signis legionibusque non absiste-
rent. Nostri acriter in eos impetu facto reppulerunt 3
neque finem sequendi fecerunt, quoad subsidio confisi
equites, cum post se legiones viderent, praecipites 4
hostes egerunt magnoque eorum numero interfecto
neque sui colligendi neque consistendi aut ex essedis
desiliendi facultatem dederunt. Ex hac fuga protinus 5
quae undique convenerant auxilia discesserunt, neque
post id tempus umquam summis nobiscum copiis hostes
contenderunt.

Caesar marches for Cassivellaunus's territory and forces the passage of the Thames.

18 Caesar cognito consilio eorum ad flumen Tamesim
in fines Cassivellauni exercitum duxit; quod flumen
uno omnino loco pedibus, atque hoc aegre, transiri
2 potest. Eo cum venisset, animadvertit ad alteram
fluminis ripam magnas esse copias hostium instructas.
3 Ripa autem erat acutis sudibus praefixis munita,
eiusdemque generis sub aqua defixae sudes flumine
4 tegebantur. His rebus cognitis a captivis perfugisque
Caesar praemisso equitatu confestim legiones subsequi
5 iussit. Sed ea celeritate atque eo impetu milites
ierunt, cum capite solo ex aqua exstarent, ut hostes
impetum legionum atque equitum sustinere non pos-
sent ripasque dimitterent ac se fugae mandarent.

Charioteers harass his cavalry.

19 Cassivellaunus, ut supra demonstravimus, omni
deposita spe contentionis dimissis amplioribus copiis,
milibus circiter IIII essedariorum relictis, itinera
nostra servabat paulumque ex via excedebat locisque
impeditis ac silvestribus sese occultabat, atque iis
regionibus quibus nos iter facturos cognoverat pecora
2 atque homines ex agris in silvas compellebat et, cum
equitatus noster liberius praedandi vastandique causa
se in agros effuderat, [omnibus viis notis semitisque]
essedarios ex silvis emittebat et magno cum periculo
nostrorum equitum cum his confligebat atque hoc
3 metu latius vagari prohibebat. Relinquebatur ut
neque longius ab agmine legionum discedi Caesar
pateretur et tantum in agris vastandis incendiisque
faciendis hostibus noceretur, quantum labore atque
itinere legionarii milites efficere poterant.

The Trinovantes supply him with grain.

20 Interim Trinovantes, prope firmissima earum regio-
num civitas, ex qua Mandubracius adulescens
Caesaris fidem secutus ad eum in continentem ve-
nerat, cuius pater in ea civitate regnum obtinuerat
interfectusque erat a Cassivellauno, ipse fuga mortem

vitaverat, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque 2
sese ei dedituros atque imperata facturos; petunt ut 3
Mandubracium ab iniuria Cassivellauni defendat atque
in civitatem mittat, qui praesit imperiumque obtineat.
His Caesar imperat obsides XL frumentumque exer- 4
citui Mandubraciumque ad eos mittit. Illi imperata
celeriter fecerunt, obsides ad numerum frumentum-
que miserunt.

Five tribes submit: capture of Cassivellaunus's stronghold.

Trinovantibus defensis atque ab omni militum 21
iniuria prohibitis, Cenimagni, Segontiaci, Ancalites,
Bibroci, Cassi legationibus missis sese Caesari dedunt.
Ab his cognoscit non longe ex eo loco oppidum Cas- 2
sivellauni abesse silvis paludibusque munitum, quo
satis magnus hominum pecorisque numerus conve-
nerit. Oppidum autem Britanni vocant, cum silvas 3
impeditas vallo atque fossa munierunt, quo incur-
sionis hostium vitandae causa convenire consuerunt.
Eo proficiscitur cum legionibus: locum reperit egregie 4
natura atque opere munitum; tamen hunc duabus
ex partibus oppugnare contendit. Hostes paulisper 5
morati militum nostrorum impetum non tulerunt
seseque alia ex parte oppidi eiecerunt. Magnus ibi 6
numerus pecoris repertus multique in fuga sunt com-
prehensi atque interfecti.

The kings of Kent, in obedience to Cassivellaunus, attack the naval camp, but are repulsed.

Dum haec in his locis geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad 22
Cantium, [quod esse ad mare supra demonstravimus,]
quibus regionibus IIII reges praeerant, Cingetorix,
Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segovax, nuntios mittit atque
his imperat uti coactis omnibus copiis castra navalia
de improviso adoriantur atque oppugnent. Hi cum 2
ad castra venissent, nostri eruptione facta multis
eorum interfectis, capto etiam nobili duce Lugotorige,

Cassivellaunus comes to terms.

suos incolumes reduxerunt. Cassivellaunus hoc proe- 3
lio nuntiato, tot detrimentis acceptis, vastatis finibus,

maxime etiam permotus defectione civitatum, legatos
per Atrebatem Commium de deditione ad Caesarem
4 mittit. Caesar, cum constituisset hiemare in conti-
nenti propter repentinos Galliae motus neque multum
aestatis superesset atque id facile extrahi posse in-
tellegeret, obsides imperat et quid in annos singulos
vectigalis populo Romano Britannia penderet con-
5 stituit; interdicit atque imperat Cassivellauno ne
Mandubracio neu Trinovantibus noceat.

Caesar and his army return to Gaul.

23 Obsidibus acceptis exercitum reducit ad mare, naves
2 invenit refectas. His deductis, quod et captivorum
magnum numerum habebat et non nullae tempestate
deperierant naves, duobus commeatibus exercitum
3 reportare instituit. Ac sic accidit uti ex tanto na-
vium numero tot navigationibus neque hoc neque
superiore anno ulla omnino navis, quae milites por-
4 taret, desideraretur, at ex iis quae inanes ex continenti
ad eum remitterentur, prioris commeatus expositis
militibus, et quas postea Labienus faciendas curaverat
numero LX, perpaucae locum caperent, reliquae fere
5 omnes reicerentur. Quas cum aliquamdiu Caesar
frustra expectasset, ne anni tempore a navigatione
excluderetur, quod aequinoctium suberat, necessario
angustius milites conlocavit ac summa tranquillitate
6 consecuta, secunda inita cum solvisset vigilia, prima
luce terram attigit omnesque incolumes naves perduxit.

Distribution of the legions in winter quarters over a wide area.

24 Subductis navibus concilioque Gallorum Samaro-
brivae peracto, quod eo anno frumentum in Gallia
propter siccitates angustius provenerat, coactus est
aliter ac superioribus annis exercitum in hibernis
conlocare legionesque in plures civitates distribuere.
2 Ex quibus unam in Morinos ducendam C. Fabio
legato dedit, alteram in Nervios Q. Ciceroni, tertiam
in Esuvios L. Roscio, quartam in Remis cum T. La-

bieno in confinio Treverorum hiemare iussit, tres in
Belgio conlocavit: his M. Crassum quaestorem et 3
L. Munatium Plancum et C. Trebonium legatos prae-
fecit. Unam legionem, quam proxime trans Padum 4
conscripserat, et cohortes V in Eburones, quorum pars
maxima est inter Mosam ac Rhenum, qui sub imperio
Ambiorigis et Catuvolci erant, misit. His militibus 5
Q. Titurium Sabinum et L. Aurunculeium Cottam
legatos praeesse iussit. Ad hunc modum distributis 6
legionibus facillime inopiae ⟨rei⟩ frumentariae sese
mederi posse existimavit. Atque harum tamen om- 7
nium legionum hiberna, praeter eam quam L. Roscio
in pacatissimam et quietissimam partem ducendam
dederat, milibus passuum C continebantur. Ipse in- 8
terea, quoad legiones conlocatas munitaque hiberna
cognovisset, in Gallia morari constituit.

Assassination of Tasgetius.

Erat in Carnutibus summo loco natus Tasgetius, **25**
cuius maiores in sua civitate regnum obtinuerant.
Huic Caesar pro eius virtute atque in se benevo- 2
lentia, quod in omnibus bellis singulari eius opera
fuerat usus, maiorum locum restituerat. Tertium 3
iam hunc annum regnantem inimici palam multis
ex civitate auctoribus interfecerunt. Defertur ea res
ad Caesarem. Ille veritus, quod ad plures pertinebat, 4
ne civitas eorum impulsu deficeret, L. Plancum cum
legione ex Belgio celeriter in Carnutes proficisci iubet
ibique hiemare, quorumque opera cognoverit Tasgetium
interfectum, hos comprehensos ad se mittere. Interim 5
ab omnibus legatis quaestoribusque, quibus legiones
tradiderat, certior factus est in hiberna perventum·
locumque esse munitum.

Ambiorix and Catuvolcus, kings of

Diebus circiter XV quibus in hiberna ventum est **26**
initium repentini tumultus ac defectionis ortum est
ab Ambiorige et Catuvolco; qui cum ad fines regni 2

the Eburones, make an abortive attack on the camp [Atuatuca] of Sabinus and Cotta.

sui Sabino Cottaeque praesto fuissent frumentumque
in hiberna comportavissent, Indutiomari Treveri nun-
tiis impulsi suos concitaverunt subitoque oppressis
lignatoribus magna manu ad castra oppugnanda vene-
3 runt. Cum celeriter nostri arma cepissent vallumque
ascendissent atque una ex parte Hispanis ⟨altera
Germanis⟩ equitibus emissis equestri proelio supe-
riores fuissent, desperata re hostes suos ab oppugna-
4 tione reduxerunt. Tum suo more conclamaverunt,
uti aliqui ex nostris ad conloquium prodiret: habere
sese quae de re communi dicere vellent, quibus rebus
controversias minui posse sperarent.

Representatives sent out to confer with them: Ambiorix advises Sabinus to transfer his troops to Cicero or Labienus.

27 Mittitur ad eos conloquendi causa C. Arpineius,
eques Romanus, familiaris Q. Titurii, et Q. Iunius ex
Hispania quidam, qui iam ante missu Caesaris ad
Ambiorigem ventitare consuerat. Apud quos Ambiorix
2 ad hunc modum locutus est: sese pro Caesaris in se
beneficiis plurimum ei confiteri debere, quod eius
opera stipendio liberatus esset quod Atuatucis finiti-
mis suis pendere consuesset, quodque ei et filius et
fratris filius a Caesare remissi essent, quos Atuatuci
obsidum numero missos apud se in servitute et catenis
3 tenuissent; neque id quod fecerit de oppugnatione
castrorum aut iudicio aut voluntate sua fecisse, sed
coactu civitatis, suaque esse eius modi imperia ut non
minus haberet iuris in se multitudo quam ipse in
4 multitudinem. Civitati porro hanc fuisse belli causam,
quod repentinae Gallorum coniurationi resistere non
potuerit. Id se facile ex humilitate sua probare posse,
quod non adeo sit imperitus rerum ut suis copiis
5 populum Romanum superari posse confidat. Sed esse
Galliae commune consilium: omnibus hibernis Caesaris
oppugnandis hunc esse dictum diem, ne qua legio
6 alteri legioni subsidio venire posset. Non facile

Gallos Gallis negare potuisse, praesertim cum de re-
cuperanda communi libertate consilium initum videre-
tur. Quibus quoniam pro pietate satis fecerit, habere 7
nunc se rationem officii pro beneficiis Caesaris: monere,
orare Titurium pro hospitio ut suae ac militum saluti
consulat. Magnam manum Germanorum conductam 8
Rhenum transisse; hanc adfore biduo. Ipsorum esse 9
consilium, velintne prius quam finitimi sentiant eductos
ex hibernis milites aut ad Ciceronem aut ad Labienum
deducere, quorum alter milia passuum circiter L, alter
paulo amplius ab iis absit. Illud se polliceri et iure 10
iurando confirmare tutum se iter per suos fines datu-
rum. Quod cum faciat, et civitati sese consulere, quod 11
hibernis levetur, et Caesari pro eius meritis gratiam
referre. Hac oratione habita discedit Ambiorix.

The advice considered in a council of war.

Arpineius et Iunius quae audierant ad legatos **28**
deferunt. Illi repentina re perturbati, etsi ab hoste
ea dicebantur, tamen non neglegenda existimabant,
maximeque hac re permovebantur, quod civitatem
ignobilem atque humilem Eburonum sua sponte po-
pulo Romano bellum facere ausam vix erat credendum.
Itaque ad consilium rem deferunt, magnaque inter eos 2
exsistit controversia. L. Aurunculeius compluresque 3
tribuni militum et primorum ordinum centuriones nihil
temere agendum neque ex hibernis iniussu Caesaris
discedendum existimabant; quantasvis ⟨Gallorum⟩, 4
magnas etiam copias Germanorum sustineri posse
munitis hibernis docebant; rem esse testimonio, quod
primum hostium impetum multis ultro vulneribus
inlatis fortissime sustinuerint; re frumentaria non 5
premi; interea et ex proximis hibernis et a Caesare con-
ventura subsidia; postremo quid esset levius aut turpius 6
quam auctore hoste de summis rebus capere consilium?

Contra ea Titurius sero facturos clamitabat, cum **29**

maiores manus hostium adiunctis Germanis conve-
nissent, aut cum aliquid calamitatis in proximis
hibernis esset acceptum. Brevem consulendi esse
2 occasionem. Caesarem arbitrari profectum in Italiam;
neque aliter Carnutes interficiundi Tasgetii consilium
fuisse capturos neque Eburones, si ille adesset, tanta
3 contemptione nostri ad castra venturos. Sese non
hostem auctorem sed rem spectare: subesse Rhenum;
magno esse Germanis dolori Ariovisti mortem et
4 superiores nostras victorias; ardere Galliam tot con-
tumeliis acceptis sub populi Romani imperium redac-
5 tam, superiore gloria rei militaris exstincta. Postremo
quis hoc sibi persuaderet sine certa spe Ambiorigem
6 ad eius modi consilium descendisse? Suam sententiam
in utramque partem esse tutam: si nihil esset durius,
nullo cum periculo ad proximam legionem perventuros;
si Gallia omnis cum Germanis consentiret, unam esse
7 in celeritate positam salutem. Cottae quidem atque
eorum qui dissentirent consilium quem haberet exitum?
in quo si non praesens periculum, at certe longinqua
obsidione fames esset timenda.

30 Hac in utramque partem disputatione habita, cum
a Cotta primisque ordinibus acriter resisteretur,
'vincite', inquit, 'si ita vultis', Sabinus, et id clariore
2 voce, ut magna pars militum exaudiret; 'neque is
sum', inquit, 'qui gravissime ex vobis mortis periculo
terrear. Hi sapient: si gravius quid acciderit, abs
3 te rationem reposcent; qui, si per te liceat, perendino
die cum proximis hibernis coniuncti communem cum
reliquis belli casum sustineant, non reiecti et relegati
longe a ceteris aut ferro aut fame intereant.'

Sabinus decides to accept it.

31 Consurgitur ex consilio; comprehendunt utrumque
et orant ne sua dissensione et pertinacia rem in
2 summum periculum deducant: facilem esse rem, seu

maneant seu proficiscantur, si modo unum omnes
sentiant ac probent; contra in dissensione nullam
se salutem perspicere. Res disputatione ad mediam 3
noctem perducitur. Tandem dat Cotta permotus
manus: superat sententia Sabini. Pronuntiatur prima 4
luce ituros. Consumitur vigiliis reliqua pars noctis,
cum sua quisque miles circumspiceret, quid secum
portare posset, quid ex instrumento hibernorum re-
linquere cogeretur. Omnia excogitantur, quare nec 5
sine periculo maneatur et languore militum et vigiliis
periculum augeatur. Prima luce sic ex castris profi- 6
ciscuntur ut quibus esset persuasum non ab hoste,
sed ab homine amicissimo consilium datum, longissimo
agmine maximisque impedimentis.

The brigade leaves the camp.

At hostes, postea quam ex nocturno fremitu vigi- **32**
liisque de profectione eorum senserunt, conlocatis
insidiis bipertito in silvis oportuno atque occulto loco
a milibus passuum circiter duobus Romanorum ad-
ventum exspectabant, et cum se maior pars agminis 2
in magnam convallem demisisset, ex utraque parte
eius vallis subito se ostenderunt novissimosque pre-
mere et primos prohibere ascensu atque iniquissimo
nostris loco proelium committere coeperunt.

Ambiorix's forces attack the column in a defile.

Tum demum Titurius, qui nihil ante providisset, **33**
trepidare et concursare cohortesque disponere, haec
tamen ipsa timide atque ut eum omnia deficere vide-
rentur; quod plerumque iis accidere consuevit qui
in ipso negotio consilium capere coguntur. At Cotta, 2
qui cogitasset haec posse in itinere accidere atque ob
eam causam profectionis auctor non fuisset, nulla
in re communi saluti deerat et in appellandis cohor-
tandisque militibus imperatoris et in pugna militis
officia praestabat. Cum propter longitudinem agminis 3
non facile per se omnia obire et quid quoque loco

faciendum esset providere possent, iusserunt pronun-
tiari ut impedimenta relinquerent atque in orbem
4 consisterent. Quod consilium etsi in eius modi casu
reprehendendum non est, tamen incommode accidit:
5 nam et nostris militibus spem minuit et hostes ad
pugnam alacriores effecit, quod non sine summo timore
6 et desperatione id factum videbatur. Praeterea accidit,
quod fieri necesse erat, ut vulgo milites ab signis
discederent quaeque quisque eorum carissima haberet
ab impedimentis petere atque arripere properaret,
clamore et fletu omnia complerentur.

34 At barbaris consilium non defuit. Nam duces
eorum tota acie pronuntiari iusserunt, ne quis ab
loco discederet: illorum esse praedam atque illis
reservari quaecumque Romani reliquissent; proinde
2 omnia in victoria posita existimarent. [Erant et
virtute et numero pugnandi pares.] Nostri tametsi
ab duce et a fortuna deserebantur, tamen omnem
spem salutis in virtute ponebant, et quotiens quaeque
cohors procurrerat, ab ea parte magnus numerus
3 hostium cadebat. Qua re animadversa Ambiorix pro-
nuntiari iubet, ut procul tela coiciant neu propius
accedant et, quam in partem Romani impetum fece-
4 rint, cedant, levitate armorum et cotidiana exercita-
tione nihil his noceri posse, rursus se ad signa reci-
pientes insequantur.

35 Quo praecepto ab iis diligentissime observato, cum
quaepiam cohors ex orbe excesserat atque impetum
2 fecerat, hostes velocissime refugiebant. Interim eam
partem nudari necesse erat et ab latere aperto tela
3 recipere. Rursus, cum in eum locum unde erant
progressi reverti coeperant, et ab iis qui cesserant et
4 ab iis qui proximi steterant circumveniebantur; sin
autem locum tenere vellent, nec virtuti locus relinque-

batur neque ab tanta multitudine coniecta tela conferti
vitare poterant. Tamen tot incommodis conflictati 5
multis vulneribus acceptis resistebant et magna parte
diei consumpta, cum a prima luce ad horam octavam
pugnaretur, nihil quod ipsis esset indignum committe-
bant. Tum T. Balventio, qui superiore anno primum 6
pilum duxerat, viro forti et magnae auctoritatis,
utrumque femur tragula traicitur; Q. Lucanius, eius- 7
dem ordinis, fortissime pugnans, dum circumvento
filio subvenit, interficitur; L. Cotta legatus omnes 8
cohortes ordinesque adhortans in adversum os funda
vulneratur.

His rebus permotus Q. Titurius, cum procul Ambio- **36**
rigem suos cohortantem conspexisset, interpretem
suum Cn. Pompeium ad eum mittit rogatum ut sibi
militibusque parcat. Ille appellatus respondet: si 2
velit secum conloqui, licere; sperare a multitudine
impetrari posse quod ad militum salutem pertineat;
ipsi vero nihil nocitum iri, inque eam rem se suam
fidem interponere. Ille cum Cotta saucio communicat, 3
si videatur, pugna ut excedant et cum Ambiorige una
conloquantur: sperare se ab eo de sua ac militum
salute impetrari posse. Cotta se ad armatum hostem 4
iturum negat atque in eo perseverat.

Sabinus parleys with Ambiorix and is killed. The Roman troops annihilated.

Sabinus quos in praesentia tribunos militum circum **37**
se habebat et primorum ordinum centuriones se sequi
iubet, et cum propius Ambiorigem accessisset, iussus
arma abicere imperatum facit suisque ut idem faciant
imperat. Interim, dum de condicionibus inter se 2
agunt longiorque consulto sermo ab Ambiorige insti-
tuitur, paulatim circumventus interficitur. Tum vero 3
suo more victoriam conclamant atque ululatum tollunt
impetuque in nostros facto ordines perturbant. Ibi 4
L. Cotta pugnans interficitur cum maxima parte

militum. Reliqui se in castra recipiunt, unde erant
5 egressi. Ex quibus L. Petrosidius aquilifer, cum
magna multitudine hostium premeretur, aquilam intra
vallum proicit; ipse pro castris fortissime pugnans
6 occiditur. Illi aegre ad noctem oppugnationem susti-
nent; nocte ad unum omnes desperata salute se ipsi
7 interficiunt. Pauci ex proelio elapsi incertis itineribus
per silvas ad T. Labienum legatum in hiberna perve-
niunt atque eum de rebus gestis certiorem faciunt.

Ambiorix incites the Atuatuci and Nervii to attack Cicero's camp.

38 Hac victoria sublatus Ambiorix statim cum equitatu
in Atuatucos, qui erant eius regno finitimi, profici-
scitur; neque noctem neque diem intermittit pedita-
2 tumque se subsequi iubet. Re demonstrata Atuatu-
cisque concitatis, postero die in Nervios pervenit
hortaturque ne sui in perpetuum liberandi atque
ulciscendi Romanos pro iis quas acceperint iniuriis
3 occasionem dimittant. Interfectos esse legatos duos
magnamque partem exercitus interisse demonstrat;
4 nihil esse negotii subito oppressam legionem quae cum
Cicerone hiemet interfici; se ad eam rem profitetur
adiutorem. Facile hac oratione Nerviis persuadet.

The attack begins.

39 Itaque confestim dimissis nuntiis ad Ceutrones,
Grudios, Levacos, Pleumoxios, Geidumnos, qui omnes
sub eorum imperio sunt, quam maximas possunt
manus cogunt et de improviso ad Ciceronis hiberna
advolant nondum ad eum fama de Titurii morte
2 perlata. Huic quoque accidit, quod fuit necesse, ut
non nulli milites, qui lignationis munitionisque causa
in silvas discessissent, repentino equitum adventu
3 interciperentur. His circumventis magna manu Ebu-
rones, Nervii, Atuatuci atque horum omnium socii et
clientes legionem oppugnare incipiunt. Nostri celeriter
4 ad arma concurrunt, vallum conscendunt. Aegre is
dies sustentatur, quod omnem spem hostes in celeritate

ponebant atque hanc adepti victoriam in perpetuum
se fore victores confidebant.

The defence.

Mittuntur ad Caesarem confestim a Cicerone litterae 40
magnis propositis praemiis, si pertulissent; obsessis
omnibus viis missi intercipiuntur. Noctu ex ea materia 2
quam munitionis causa comportaverant turres admo-
dum CXX excitantur; incredibili celeritate quae deesse
operi videbantur perficiuntur. Hostes postero die 3
multo maioribus coactis copiis castra oppugnant, fos-
sam complent. A nostris eadem ratione qua pridie 4
resistitur. Hoc idem reliquis deinceps fit diebus.
Nulla pars nocturni temporis ad laborem intermit- 5
titur; non aegris, non vulneratis facultas quietis
datur. Quaecumque ad proximi diei oppugnationem
opus sunt noctu comparantur; multae praeustae sudes, 6
magnus muralium pilorum numerus instituitur; turres
contabulantur, pinnae loricaeque ex cratibus attexun-
tur. Ipse Cicero, cum tenuissima valetudine esset, 7
ne nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quietem relin-
quebat, ut ultro militum concursu ac vocibus sibi
parcere cogeretur.

Cicero refuses 'to accept terms from an armed enemy'.

Tum duces principesque Nerviorum, qui aliquem 41
sermonis aditum causamque amicitiae cum Cicerone
habebant, conloqui sese velle dicunt. Facta potestate 2
eadem quae Ambiorix cum Titurio egerat comme-
morant: omnem Galliam esse in armis, Germanos 3
Rhenum transisse, Caesaris reliquorumque hiberna
oppugnari. Addunt etiam de Sabini morte; Ambio- 4
rigem ostentant fidei faciundae causa. Errare eos 5
dicunt, si quicquam ab iis praesidii sperent qui suis
rebus diffidant; sese tamen hoc esse in Ciceronem
populumque Romanum animo ut nihil nisi hiberna
recusent atque hanc inveterascere consuetudinem
nolint; licere illis per se incolumibus ex hibernis 6

discedere et quascumque in partes velint sine metu
7 proficisci. Cicero ad haec unum modo respondet:
non esse consuetudinem populi Romani accipere ab
8 hoste armato condicionem; si ab armis discedere
velint, se adiutore utantur legatosque ad Caesarem
mittant; sperare se pro eius iustitia quae petierint
impetraturos.

The Nervii adopt Roman siege methods.

42 Ab hac spe repulsi Nervii vallo pedum X et fossa
2 pedum XV hiberna cingunt. Haec et superiorum
annorum consuetudine a nobis cognoverant et quosdam
3 de exercitu nacti captivos ab his docebantur; sed
nulla ferramentorum copia, quae essent ad hunc usum
idonea, gladiis caespites circumcidere, manibus sagu-
4 lisque terram exhaurire cogebantur. Qua quidem ex
re hominum multitudo cognosci potuit: nam minus
horis tribus milium passuum III in circuitu muni-
5 tionem perfecerunt. Reliquis diebus turres ad alti-
tudinem valli, falces testudinesque, quas idem captivi
docuerant, parare ac facere coeperunt.

A desperate assault resolutely repelled.

43 Septimo oppugnationis die maximo coorto vento
ferventes fusili ex argilla glandes fundis et fervefacta
iacula in casas, quae more Gallico stramentis erant
2 tectae, iacere coeperunt. Hae celeriter ignem compre-
henderunt et venti magnitudine in omnem locum
3 castrorum distulerunt. Hostes maximo clamore sicuti
parta iam atque explorata victoria turres testudines-
4 que agere et scalis vallum ascendere coeperunt. At
tanta militum virtus atque ea praesentia animi fuit
ut, cum undique flamma torrerentur maximaque
telorum multitudine premerentur suaque omnia im-
pedimenta atque omnes fortunas conflagrare intellege-
rent, non modo [demigrandi causa] de vallo decederet
nemo sed paene ne respiceret quidem quisquam, ac
5 tum omnes acerrime fortissimeque pugnarent. Hic

dies nostris longe gravissimus fuit, sed tamen hunc
habuit eventum ut eo die maximus numerus hostium
vulneraretur atque interficeretur, ut se sub ipso vallo
constipaverant recessumque primis ultimi non dabant.
Paulum quidem intermissa flamma et quodam loco 6
turri adacta et contingente vallum, tertiae cohortis
centuriones ex eo quo stabant loco recesserunt suosque
omnes removerunt, nutu vocibusque hostes, si introire
vellent, vocare coeperunt; quorum progredi ausus
est nemo. Tum ex omni parte lapidibus coniectis 7
deturbati turrisque succensa est.

The rivalry of Pullo and Vorenus.

Erant in ea legione fortissimi viri, centuriones, qui **44**
iam primis ordinibus adpropinquarent, T. Pullo et
L. Vorenus. Hi perpetuas inter se controversias 2
habebant, uter alteri anteferretur, omnibusque annis
de loco summis simultatibus contendebant. Ex his 3
Pullo, cum acerrime ad munitiones pugnaretur, 'quid
dubitas', inquit, 'Vorene? aut quem locum tuae pro-
bandae virtutis exspectas? hic dies de nostris contro-
versiis iudicabit.' Haec cum dixisset, procedit extra 4
munitiones, quaeque pars hostium confertissima est
visa, in eam inrumpit. Ne Vorenus quidem sese tum 5
vallo continet, sed omnium veritus existimationem
subsequitur. Mediocri spatio relicto Pullo pilum in 6
hostes immittit atque unum ex multitudine procur-
rentem traicit; quo percusso et exanimato hunc scutis
protegunt hostes, in illum universi tela coiciunt neque
dant progrediendi facultatem. Transfigitur scutum 7
Pulloni et verutum in balteo defigitur. Avertit hic 8
casus vaginam et gladium educere conanti dextram
moratur manum, impeditumque hostes circumsistunt.
Succurrit inimicus illi Vorenus et laboranti subvenit. 9
Ad hunc se confestim a Pullone omnis multitudo 10
convertit [, illum veruto transfixum arbitrantur].

11 Vorenus gladio rem comminus gerit atque uno inter-
12 fecto reliquos paulum propellit; dum cupidius instat,
13 in locum delatus inferiorem concidit. Huic rursus
circumvento subsidium fert Pullo, atque ambo inco-
lumes compluribus interfectis summa cum laude sese
14 intra munitiones recipiunt. Sic fortuna in contentione
et certamine utrumque versavit, ut alter alteri inimi-
cus auxilio salutique esset neque diiudicari posset, uter
utri virtute anteferendus videretur.

A Gallic slave carries a dispatch to Caesar.

45 Quanto erat in dies gravior atque asperior oppu-
gnatio, et maxime quod magna parte militum confecta
vulneribus res ad paucitatem defensorum pervenerat,
tanto crebriores litterae nuntiique ad Caesarem mitte-
bantur; quorum pars deprehensa in conspectu nostro-
2 rum militum cum cruciatu necabatur. Erat unus intus
Nervius, nomine Vertico, loco natus honesto, qui a
prima obsidione ad Ciceronem perfugerat suamque ei
3 fidem praestiterat. Hic servo spe libertatis magnis-
que persuadet praemiis ut litteras ad Caesarem deferat.
4 Has ille in iaculo inligatas effert et Gallus inter Gallos
sine ulla suspicione versatus ad Caesarem pervenit.
5 Ab eo de periculis Ciceronis legionisque cognoscitur.

Caesar marches to the rescue,

46 Caesar acceptis litteris hora circiter XI. diei statim
nuntium in Bellovacos ad M. Crassum quaestorem
mittit, cuius hiberna aberant ab eo milia passuum
2 XXV; iubet media nocte legionem proficisci celeriter-
3 que ad se venire. Exit cum nuntio Crassus. Alterum
ad C. Fabium legatum mittit, ut in Atrebatium fines
legionem adducat, qua sibi iter faciendum sciebat.
4 Scribit Labieno, si rei publicae commodo facere possit,
cum legione ad fines Nerviorum veniat. Reliquam
partem exercitus, quod paulo aberat longius, non
putat expectandam; equites circiter CCCC ex proximis
hibernis cogit.

Hora circiter III. ab antecursoribus de Crassi ad- **47**
ventu certior factus eo die milia passuum XX pro-
greditur. Crassum Samarobrivae praeficit legionem- 2
que ei attribuit, quod ibi impedimenta exercitus,
obsides civitatum, litteras publicas frumentumque
omne, quod eo tolerandae hiemis causa devexerat,
relinquebat. Fabius, ut imperatum erat, non ita 3
multum moratus in itinere cum legione occurrit.
Labienus interitu Sabini et caede cohortium cognita, 4
cum omnes ad eum Treverorum copiae venissent,
veritus ne, si ex hibernis fugae similem profectionem
fecisset, hostium impetum sustinere non posset, prae-
sertim quos recenti victoria efferri sciret, litteras 5
Caesari remittit, quanto cum periculo legionem ex
hibernis educturus esset; rem gestam in Eburonibus
perscribit; docet omnes equitatus peditatusque copias
Treverorum III milia passuum longe ab suis castris
consedisse.

Caesar consilio eius probato, etsi opinione trium **48**
legionum deiectus ad duas redierat, tamen unum
communi saluti auxilium in celeritate ponebat. Venit 2
magnis itineribus in Nerviorum fines. Ibi ex captivis
cognoscit quae apud Ciceronem gerantur quantoque
in periculo res sit. Tum cuidam ex equitibus Gallis 3
magnis praemiis persuadet uti ad Ciceronem epistulam
deferat. Hanc Graecis conscriptam litteris mittit, ne 4
intercepta epistula nostra ab hostibus consilia cogno-
scantur. Si adire non possit, monet ut tragulam cum 5
epistula ad ammentum deligata intra munitiones
castrorum abiciat. In litteris scribit se cum legioni- 6
bus profectum celeriter adfore; hortatur ut pristinam
virtutem retineat. Gallus periculum veritus, ut erat 7
praeceptum, tragulam mittit. Haec casu ad turrim 8
adhaesit neque a nostris biduo animadversa tertio die

and sends a dispatch to Cicero.

a quodam milite conspicitur, dempta ad Ciceronem
9 defertur. Ille perlectam in conventu militum recitat
10 maximaque omnes laetitia adficit. Tum fumi incendiorum procul videbantur, quae res omnem dubitationem adventus legionum expulit.

The Gauls raise the siege and march to encounter Caesar,

49 Galli re cognita per exploratores obsidionem relinquunt, ad Caesarem omnibus copiis contendunt. Haec
2 erant armata circiter milia LX. Cicero data facultate Gallum ⟨eundem⟩ ab eodem Verticone, quem supra demonstravimus, repetit, qui litteras ad Caesarem
3 deferat. Hunc admonet iter caute diligenterque faciat. Perscribit in litteris hostes ab se discessisse
4 omnemque ad eum multitudinem convertisse. Quibus litteris circiter media nocte Caesar adlatis suos facit certiores eosque ad dimicandum animo confirmat.
5 Postero die luce prima movet castra et circiter milia passuum IIII progressus trans vallem magnam et
6 rivum multitudinem hostium conspicatur. Erat magni periculi res tantulis copiis iniquo loco dimicare; tum, quoniam obsidione liberatum Ciceronem sciebat, aequo animo remittendum de celeritate existimabat: considit et quam aequissimo potest loco castra communit atque
7 haec, etsi erant exigua per se, vix hominum milium VII, praesertim nullis cum impedimentis, tamen angustiis viarum quam maxime potest contrahit, eo consilio ut
8 in summam contemptionem hostibus veniat. Interim speculatoribus in omnes partes dimissis explorat quo commodissime itinere vallem transire possit.

who entices them to attack him on unfavourable ground.

50 Eo die parvulis equestribus proeliis ad aquam factis
2 utrique sese suo loco continent: Galli, quod ampliores
3 copias, quae nondum convenerant, exspectabant, Caesar, si forte timoris simulatione hostes in suum locum elicere posset, ut citra vallem pro castris proelio contenderet; si id efficere non posset, ut exploratis

itineribus minore cum periculo vallem rivumque
transiret. Prima luce hostium equitatus ad castra 4
accedit proeliumque cum nostris equitibus committit.
Caesar consulto equites cedere seque in castra recipere 5
iubet, simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiore vallo
muniri portasque obstrui atque in his administrandis
rebus quam maxime concursari et cum simulatione
agi timoris iubet.

Rout of the Gauls.

Quibus omnibus rebus hostes invitati copias tradu- 51
cunt aciemque iniquo loco constituunt, nostris vero 2
etiam de vallo deductis propius accedunt et tela intra
munitionem ex omnibus partibus coiciunt praeconi- 3
busque circummissis pronuntiari iubent, seu quis Gallus
seu Romanus velit ante horam tertiam ad se transire,
sine periculo licere; post id tempus non fore potestatem.
Ac sic nostros contempserunt ut obstructis in speciem 4
portis singulis ordinibus caespitum, quod ea non posse
introrumpere videbantur, alii vallum manu scindere,
alii fossas complere inciperent. Tum Caesar omnibus 5
portis eruptione facta equitatuque emisso celeriter
hostes in fugam dat, sic uti omnino pugnandi causa
resisteret nemo, magnumque ex iis numerum occidit
atque omnes armis exuit.

Caesar rejoins Cicero.

Longius prosequi veritus, quod silvae paludesque 52
intercedebant neque etiam parvulo detrimento illorum
locum relinqui videbat, omnibus suis incolumibus
eodem die ad Ciceronem pervenit. Institutas turres, 2
testudines munitionesque hostium admiratur; pro-
ducta legione cognoscit non decimum quemque esse
reliquum militem sine vulnere; ex his omnibus iudicat 3
rebus quanto cum periculo et quanta virtute res sint
administratae. Ciceronem pro eius merito legionem- 4
que conlaudat; centuriones singillatim tribunosque
militum appellat, quorum egregiam fuisse virtutem

testimonio Ciceronis cognoverat. De casu Sabini et
5 Cottae certius ex captivis cognoscit. Postero die con-
tione habita rem gestam proponit, milites consolatur
6 et confirmat; quod detrimentum culpa et temeritate
legati sit acceptum, hoc aequiore animo ferundum
docet, quod beneficio deorum immortalium et virtute
eorum expiato incommodo neque hostibus diutina
laetitia neque ipsis longior dolor relinquatur.

Immediate results of Caesar's victory.

53 Interim ad Labienum per Remos incredibili celeri-
tate de victoria Caesaris fama perfertur, ut, cum ab
hibernis Ciceronis milia passuum circiter LX abesset
eoque post horam nonam diei Caesar pervenisset, ante
mediam noctem ad portas castrorum clamor oriretur,
quo clamore significatio victoriae gratulatioque ab
2 Remis Labieno fieret. Hac fama ad Treveros perlata
Indutiomarus, qui postero die castra Labieni oppu-
gnare decreverat, noctu profugit copiasque omnes in
Treveros reducit. Caesar Fabium cum legione in sua
3 remittit hiberna, ipse cum III legionibus circum Sama-
robrivam trinis hibernis hiemare constituit et, quod
tanti motus Galliae exstiterant, totam hiemem ipse ad

Gallic tribes continue to intrigue.

4 exercitum manere decrevit. Nam illo incommodo de
Sabini morte perlato omnes fere Galliae civitates
de bello consultabant, [nuntios] legationesque in
omnes partes dimittebant et quid reliqui consilii
caperent atque unde initium belli fieret explorabant
5 nocturnaque in locis desertis concilia habebant. Neque
ullum fere totius hiemis tempus sine sollicitudine
Caesaris intercessit, quin aliquem de consiliis ac motu
6 Gallorum nuntium acciperet. In his ab L. Roscio
quaestore, quem legioni XIII. praefecerat, certior
factus est magnas copias earum civitatum quae
Aremoricae appellantur oppugnandi sui causa con-
7 venisse neque longius milibus passuum VIII ab

hibernis suis afuisse, sed nuntio adlato de victoria Caesaris discessisse, adeo ut fugae similis discessus videretur.

At Caesar principibus cuiusque civitatis ad se evo- **54** catis, alios territando, [cum se scire quae fierent denuntiaret,] alios cohortando magnam partem Galliae in officio tenuit. Tamen Senones, quae est civitas in 2 primis firma et magnae inter Gallos auctoritatis, Cavarinum, quem Caesar apud eos regem constituerat, cuius frater Moritasgus adventu in Galliam Caesaris cuiusque maiores regnum obtinuerant, interficere publico consilio conati, cum ille praesensisset ac profugisset, usque ad fines insecuti regno domoque expulerunt, et missis ad Caesarem satis faciendi causa 3 legatis, cum is omnem ad se senatum venire iussisset, dicto audientes non fuerunt. Tantum apud homines 4 barbaros valuit esse aliquos repertos principes belli inferendi tantamque omnibus voluntatum commutationem attulit, ut praeter Haeduos et Remos, quos praecipuo semper honore Caesar habuit, alteros pro vetere ac perpetua erga populum Romanum fide, alteros pro recentibus Gallici belli officiis, nulla fere civitas fuerit non suspecta nobis. Idque adeo haud 5 scio mirandumne sit, cum compluribus aliis de causis, tum maxime quod qui virtute belli omnibus gentibus praeferebantur tantum se eius opinionis deperdidisse ut populi Romani imperia perferrent gravissime dolebant.

The Senones defy Caesar.

Treveri vero atque Indutiomarus totius hiemis **55** nullum tempus intermiserunt quin trans Rhenum legatos mitterent, civitates sollicitarent, pecunias pollicerentur, magna parte exercitus nostri interfecta multo minorem superesse dicerent partem. Neque tamen 2 ulli civitati Germanorum persuaderi potuit ut Rhenum transiret, cum se bis expertos dicerent, Ariovisti bello

Indutiomarus prepares to fight,

et Tencterorum transitu: non esse amplius fortunam
3 temptaturos. Hac spe lapsus Indutiomarus nihilo minus
copias cogere, exercere, a finitimis equos parare, exules
damnatosque tota Gallia magnis praemiis ad se adlicere
4 coepit. Ac tantam sibi iam his rebus in Gallia aucto-
ritatem comparaverat ut undique ad eum legationes
concurrerent, gratiam atque amicitiam publice priva-
timque peterent.

56 Ubi intellexit ultro ad se veniri, altera ex parte
Senones Carnutesque conscientia facinoris instigari,
altera Nervios Atuatucosque bellum Romanis parare,
neque sibi voluntariorum copias defore si ex finibus
suis progredi coepisset, armatum concilium indicit.
2 Hoc more Gallorum est initium belli; quo lege com-
muni omnes puberes armati convenire coguntur; qui
ex iis novissimus venit, in conspectu multitudinis
3 omnibus cruciatibus adfectus necatur. In eo concilio
Cingetorigem, alterius principem factionis, generum
suum, quem supra demonstravimus Caesaris secutum
fidem ab eo non discessisse, hostem iudicat bonaque
4 eius publicat. His rebus confectis, in concilio pro-
nuntiat arcessitum se a Senonibus et Carnutibus
5 aliisque compluribus Galliae civitatibus; huc iturum
per fines Remorum eorumque agros populaturum ac,
prius quam id faciat, castra Labieni oppugnaturum.

and besets Labienus's camp.

57 Quae fieri velit praecipit. Labienus, cum et loci
natura et manu munitissimis castris sese teneret, de
suo ac legionis periculo nihil timebat, ne quam occa-
2 sionem rei bene gerendae dimitteret cogitabat. Itaque
a Cingetorige atque eius propinquis oratione Indutio-
mari cognita quam in concilio habuerat, nuntios mittit
ad finitimas civitates equitesque undique evocat; his
3 certam diem conveniendi dicit. Interim prope cotidie
cum omni equitatu Indutiomarus sub castris eius

vagabatur, alias ut situm castrorum cognosceret, alias
conloquendi aut territandi causa; equites plerumque
omnes tela intra vallum coiciebant. Labienus suos 4
intra munitionem continebat timorisque opinionem
quibuscumque poterat rebus augebat.

Cum maiore in dies contemptione Indutiomarus ad **58**
castra accederet, nocte una intromissis equitibus omnium finitimarum civitatum quos arcessendos curaverat, tanta diligentia omnes suos custodiis intra
castra continuit ut nulla ratione ea res enuntiari aut
ad Treveros perferri posset. Interim ex consuetudine 2
cotidiana Indutiomarus ad castra accedit atque ibi
magnam partem diei consumit; equites tela coiciunt
et magna cum contumelia verborum nostros ad
pugnam evocant. Nullo ab nostris dato responso, 3
ubi visum est, sub vesperum dispersi ac dissipati
discedunt. Subito Labienus duabus portis omnem 4
equitatum emittit; praecipit atque interdicit, perterritis hostibus atque in fugam coniectis (quod fore,
sicut accidit, videbat) unum omnes petant Indutiomarum, neu quis quem prius vulneret quam illum
interfectum viderit, quod mora reliquorum spatium
nactum illum effugere nolebat; magna proponit iis 5
qui occiderint praemia; submittit cohortes equitibus
subsidio. Comprobat hominis consilium fortuna et, 6
cum unum omnes peterent, in ipso fluminis vado
deprehensus Indutiomarus interficitur caputque eius
refertur in castra; redeuntes equites quos possunt
consectantur atque occidunt. Hac re cognita, omnes 7
Eburonum et Nerviorum quae convenerant copiae
discedunt, pauloque habuit post id factum Caesar
quietiorem Galliam.

Sortie of Labienus's cavalry: Indutiomarus killed.

NOTES

List of Abbreviations.

A. B. = Rice Holmes's *Ancient Britain and the Invasions of Julius Caesar*, 1907.
B. C. = Caesar's *Commentarii de bello civili.*
C. G. = Rice Holmes's *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul*, 2nd ed., 1911.
C. R. = *Classical Review.*
C. S. = A. Klotz's *Cäsarstudien.*
D. R. R. = G. Long's *Decline of the Roman Republic.*
H. G. = C. Jullian's *Histoire de la Gaule.*
J. B. = *Jahresberichte des philologischen Vereins zu Berlin.*
L. C. = H. Meusel's *Lexicon Caesarianum.*
Ph. Suppl. = *Philologus, Supplementband.*
Rh. M. = *Rheinisches Museum.*

20, § 1. *in Britanniam . . . contendit,*—'made active preparations for an expedition to Britain'. Look up *contendo.*

§ 2. *anni.* Meusel (*J. B.*, 1910, p. 64) gives the obvious reason for rejecting this word. It seems very unlikely, however, that any reader would have written *anni* on the margin of his copy, and when I read 22, § 2, vii, 32, § 2 (*cum ipso anni tempore ad gerendum bellum vocaretur*), and vii, 68, § 2 (*quantum diei tempus est passum*), I am inclined to think that the word may be reasonably defended. Could not one say 'even if the season of the year did not serve for campaigning'? Cf. *L. C.*, i, 271.

§ 3. It would be a mistake to translate *temere* by 'rashly': it means 'readily' or 'as an ordinary affair'. Students of Druidism did undertake the journey (vi, 13, §§ 11–12), but not *temere*: they had a serious object in view.

§ 4. *Itaque . . . reperire poterat.* Many commentators have insisted that the traders could have told Caesar all that he wanted to know; and certainly it seems difficult to understand how they could have professed ignorance of the harbours without manifest contumacy: but, at least as regards the other questions, the reasons which he assigns for their silence are sufficient. Moreover, as they only knew the harbours of Kent (v, 13, § 1), none of which could shelter a large fleet, it is quite intelligible that even on this point they should have been unable to enlighten him. Still, they could have given valuable information about the Kentish coast; and the passage in which Strabo (iv, 4, § 11) says that the Veneti attacked Caesar because they

were determined to prevent him from invading Britain, the trade with which was in their hands, suggests that the merchants kept silence from interested motives. They could not foresee that Caesar's expeditions would stimulate British trade.

21, § 1. *C. Volusenum.* Volusenus, the only military tribune whom Caesar mentions with honour in the *Bellum Gallicum*, had distinguished himself in the defence of Octodurus (Martigny) in 57 B.C. (iii, 5, § 2).

navi longa. 'Long ships' or 'galleys',—to be distinguished from *naves onerariae*, 'merchant ships'—were of various kinds: everybody is familiar with the terms 'bireme', 'trireme', &c. What class this particular *navis longa* belonged to we are not told. *Naves longae* were not always even decked (*B. C.*, i, 56, § 1; iii, 7, § 2).

§ 4. *quam . . . convenire.* We may be sure that these ships were not in any port in the country of the Veneti (the department of the Morbihan) or anywhere near it when Caesar sent for them; for as only 'a small part of the summer' (20, § 1) remained when he began to prepare for the invasion of Britain, there would have been no time for his messengers to travel to the mouth of the Loire or for the galleys to make the voyage of 600 miles from the Loire to the north-eastern coast of Gaul. When the messengers set out, the galleys must have been near the port (Boulogne) from which he sailed,—probably in the mouth of the Seine or of the Somme. We may infer that Caesar had contemplated invading Britain long before the close of this summer. See *C. G.*, p. 87, and *A. B.*, pp. 300-3.

§ 5. *polliceantur* is followed by the infinitive, though in 22, § 1 *pollicerentur* takes the accusative and infinitive. When the present infinitive is used, it seems to be implied that the promise will be fulfilled immediately. So one says 'I'm coming', meaning 'I'll come at once'.

§ 7. *Atrebatibus superatis.* The Atrebates had been overthrown in 57 B.C. in the battle with the Nervii (ii, 23, § 1).

regem ibi constituerat. Probably the Atrebates were one of the many tribes among whom monarchy had been overthrown by the hand of oligarchy. Caesar's object in appointing kings, which he did on several occasions (v, 25, § 2; 54, § 2), was not only to put a premium upon loyalty, but also to use the loyal as instruments for keeping the anti-Roman party in check. This policy, however, was not altogether successful, though it may have been the best that Caesar could adopt. See *C. G.*, pp. 106, 521-3.

in his regionibus is generally, but wrongly, taken in the sense of 'in the country of the Atrebates'. It means 'in Britain'. To say that Commius had great influence in his own country would have been wholly irrelevant. Caesar sent him to Britain because he had influence there.

It has been said that as Commius was arrested on landing

(27, § 3), he could not have had great influence in Britain, and that *his regionibus* must therefore mean 'in Gaul'. But his arrest proves nothing, for the tribes of South-Eastern Britain were divided into antagonistic groups (*A. B.*, p. 300); and if Caesar wrote *his*, not *iis* (which is constantly confounded with it), *his regionibus* may mean North-Eastern Gaul *and* South-Eastern Britain, which were united by the closest ties.

§ 8. *ut . . . fidem sequantur*,—'to trust to the good faith of the Roman People',—in other words, to rely upon their protection.

§ 9. *perspectis regionibus omnibus.* Volusenus's galley (§ 1), manned by trained oarsmen, not only made him comparatively independent of wind and tide, but, owing to her superior speed, would enable him to keep clear of any ships which Gauls or Britons might send against him. The *regiones* which he explored probably did not extend beyond Lympne or, at the furthest, Rye on one side and the North Foreland on the other; for within these limits the port and the alternative landing-place of which he was in search (20, § 4; 21, § 1) were to be found. Caesar does not tell us what observations he made; but we can make a very good guess. Caesar had chosen him because he was the fittest man that he could find; and we may fairly assume that he did not neglect precautions which any competent officer would have taken, and that he did not overlook what no observant man could have failed to perceive. He spent three entire days in British waters; and his time must have been fully occupied. Of course he observed the country as far inland as he could see. But he did more. We may be sure that he noted that the beach was of shingle; that he took soundings all along the coast between Walmer and Deal (see the first note on 23, § 6) as close inshore as he could venture to go; and that he watched the phenomena which twice daily obtruded themselves upon his attention,—the rise and fall of the tide and the movement up and down the Channel of the tidal stream (*A. B.*, pp. 309–12).

auderet. The subjunctive is used because *qui . . . auderet* explains the reason why the *facultas* which Volusenus had was limited.

22, § 1. *ex . . . Morinorum.* The Morini do not act here as a united people, but individual *pagi* act on their own account. Evidently the political organization of the tribe was very loose, and the authority of the Government very weak.

quod . . . fecissent. Although *quod* in this and similar passages is described as a causal particle, it is not altogether causal. The Morini excused themselves not so much because they had disobeyed Caesar as because they were afraid of him; and *quod . . . fecissent* defines their apology. One might translate *ex magna . . . fecissent* by 'envoys came . . . to apologize for their recent conduct in attacking', &c.

barbari here means 'uncivilized'.

§ 3. *contractisque.* Meusel (*J.B.*, 1910, p. 65) deletes these words, on the ground that '*contractis* can here mean nothing else than *coactis*'. I take it that *coactis* means simply 'raised' or 'collected' (cf. ii, 5, § 4; iii, 16, § 2; vi, 7, § 1; vii, 5, § 1) and that *contractis* means 'assembled' (in one place).

praefectis,—not cavalry officers, who were called *praefecti equitum*, but auxiliary officers, that is to say, officers of the archers and slingers, who are mentioned in ii, 7, § 1 and 10, § 1.

§ 4. *eundem portum* obviously denotes the port in which the eighty transports and the galleys that were to convoy them (§ 3) had assembled, and from which Caesar set sail (23, § 1). This port was the estuary of the Liane,—in other words, the harbour of Boulogne, the Gallic name of which was Gesoriacum. Caesar embarked from the country of the Morini (see map) 'because the shortest passage to Britain was from their coast' (21, § 3): Boulogne, which Pliny (*Nat. Hist.*, iv, 23, § 122) calls the *portus Morinorum Britannicus*, was the permanent naval station of the Romans under the Empire and the port from which they habitually sailed to Britain: it was the only harbour in the country of the Morini which Pliny mentioned; and, according to Pomponius Mela (iii, 2, § 23), it was the most renowned harbour on the northern coast of Gaul. These facts make it probable that Caesar sailed from Boulogne; another proves it. The cavalry transports mentioned in § 4 sailed from a port 8 Roman miles from his own starting-point. He calls it the *ulterior portus* (23, § 1) and the *superior portus* (28, § 1); and it was therefore north or north-east of the port from which he himself sailed. If he sailed from Boulogne, the *ulterior portus* was Ambleteuse: supposing, for the sake of argument, that he sailed from the only other available port in the country of the Morini—Wissant, between Cape Blanc-Nez and Cape Gris-Nez—the *ulterior portus* was Sangatte. That he sailed from Ambleteuse himself is absolutely incredible, for he would not have selected such a small harbour for the bulk of his fleet. The cavalry transports were unable to start until the fourth day after he landed in Britain. When they were approaching the British coast and were seen from Caesar's camp 'such a violent storm suddenly arose that . . . some were carried back to the point from which they had started, while the others were swept down in great peril towards the lower and more westerly part of the island' (28, §§ 1–2). It will be shown in the note on 23, § 6 that Caesar's camp was in the neighbourhood of Walmer. But it is not necessary to assume this in order to prove that the cavalry transports started from Ambleteuse; for all the nautical experts whom I have consulted agree with me that it is incredible that a gale which drove some of the ships westward down the coast carried the others back to Sangatte. Anybody who may wish to satisfy himself

that this conclusion, which has been generally accepted, is true should read *A. B.*, pp. 558–63, 581–3, 613, 618–19, 624–5, 639, 643, 740–1.

23, § 1. *III. fere vigilia.* For military purposes the Romans divided the period between sunset and sunrise into four watches of equal length, the third of which began at midnight.

solvit (naves) means 'loosed' (the ships from their fastenings) and generally connotes the operation of letting go a hawser and putting off from shore or quay.

§ 2. *hora . . . IIII.* The Romans divided the period between sunrise and sunset into 12 hours, which of course were only equal in length to our hours at the equinox.

omnibus collibus,—the cliffs between Dover and the South Foreland, which, seen from the sea, look like a series of heights separated by well-defined depressions. The Britons were evidently prepared to defend Dover harbour if Caesar should attempt to land there. There was then a small natural harbour at Dover (*A. B.*, pp. 530–1).

§ 3. *angustis.* Meusel (*J. B.*, 1910, pp. 69–70) brackets this word, which has occasioned much discussion. 'What', he asks, 'are *montes angusti*? According to the *Thesaurus linguae Latinae*, there is not one [other] instance of such an expression in the whole of Latin literature.' He concludes (*ib.*, 1911, pp. 100–1) that *montibus angustis* could only mean 'limiting' or 'confining' mountains, and in the Golden Age of Latin literature could only have been written by a poet. Is this quite certain, seeing that, as Meusel has himself remarked, *prognati* (ii, 29, § 4) is poetical, and Caesar uses *brevitas* (ii, 30, § 4) in a sense which is elsewhere only found in poets and late writers? Heller (*Ph. Suppl.*, v, 1889, p. 385), referring to Ovid's *Metamorphoses*, v, 410 (*Quod coit angustis inclusum cornibus aequor*, where *angustis cornibus* means hills separated by a narrow fiord), maintains that *montibus angustis* means hills *qui angustum inter se spatium complectuntur*, that is to say, which are very close together. This explanation might serve if Caesar was thinking not only of the Dover cliffs, but also of the heights which hemmed in the old harbour of Dover on either side. It seems to me just possible that *angustis* may here mean 'narrow' and therefore 'precipitous'; for if a mountain is relatively narrow, it must needs be relatively precipitous. By a narrow mountain I mean a mountain whose base is narrow in proportion to its height.

§ 4. *ad horam nonam* means 'to the end of the ninth hour' (see G. Bilfinger, *Die antiken Stundenangaben*, 1888, p. 9). On August 26 the ninth hour ended in the latitude of Dover at 3.30 p.m.

§ 5. *legatis tribunisque militum.* Although Caesar, in order to oblige politicians who might be useful to him, occasionally granted sinecure tribuneships to men who had no experience

of war (Cicero, *Fam.*, vii, 8, § 1), numerous other passages in the *Bellum Gallicum* (ii, 26, § 1; iii, 14, §§ 3-4; v, 52, § 4; vi, 39, § 2; vii, 47, § 2; 62, § 6) prove that the duties of tribunes in general were most important (*C. G.*, pp. 565–7).

maritimae res, 'seamanship'.

§ 6. *His dimissis . . . constituit.* Caesar landed between Walmer Castle and Deal Castle. I have proved this in *A. B.* (pp. 595–665): here it will of course be impossible to do more than give a bare outline. Several other sites had been proposed; but the only ones of which the reader need take account are Pevensey, Lympne, and Hythe.

Any one who understood the conditions of ancient warfare and had explored the coast of Kent and Sussex, or even studied the Ordnance Map, would at once perceive that Caesar must have landed in East Kent, where the country behind the foreshore was open and he could encounter the enemy on equal terms. If he had attempted to disembark at Lympne or Hythe, he would have been obliged to force his way inland over a line of heights, whereas in those days no good general ever attacked an enemy who occupied a commanding position, if he could avoid doing so: if he had attempted to land at Pevensey or anywhere west of Lympne, he would have been confronted by the forest of the Weald.

Apart from what I have just said, Pevensey, which was proposed by the late Sir George Airy, must be rejected for the following reasons. First, it is much too far from Gaul. Caesar says (21, § 3) that he chose the shortest passage: Pevensey is about 52 nautical miles from the mouth of the Somme, where, according to Airy, Caesar embarked; while Boulogne, from which, as we have seen, he really sailed, is only 27 nautical miles from Dover. Secondly, in the neighbourhood of Pevensey the *montes* off which Caesar anchored (23, § 3) do not exist: Airy was forced to identify them with what he himself describes as cliffs 'ten to thirty feet high'! Thirdly, Airy himself, who knew all that was to be known about the tides, and who maintained that Caesar sailed from his anchorage to his landing-place on the westward stream, was obliged to admit that he could not have done so unless, when he anchored, he had been 5 nautical miles from the coast! From this distance he could not have seen the Britons on the cliffs (23, § 2) without a telescope, and even the ridiculous cliffs, 'ten to thirty feet high,' could not have been distinguished. Fourthly, Caesar sailed for Britain in 54 B.C. with a south-west wind (v, 8, § 2); and to sail for Pevensey from either Boulogne or Wissant (see the note on 22, § 4) or even from the Somme with a south-west wind would have been sheer folly. Lastly, Caesar says (v, 23, § 6) that in 54 B.C. he started on his voyage from Britain to Gaul 'at the beginning of the second watch' in 'a dead calm' (*summa tranquillitate*),—in other words, his ships, which in that

year were built both for rowing and sailing (v, 1, § 3), were rowed; he reached land at dawn; and to row 52 nautical miles in 8 hours was, needless to say, impossible. Several other reasons could be given; but these are enough.

Lympne and Hythe must also be rejected. It has been calculated that the tidal stream had been running westward for several hours before the end of the ninth hour (see 23, § 4): therefore, supposing that Caesar sailed from his anchorage westward, unless he could have estimated the exact time which the stream had still to run he would have had to face the risk that, before he could reach his landing-place, it might turn against him. His own words (*et ventum et aestum uno tempore nactus secundum*) show that he weighed anchor just after the stream had turned (eastward). He implies (26, § 5) that if he had had his cavalry with him, he would have been able to make good use of them; but what would have been the use of sending cavalry up the steep slopes on which stand the ruins of Stutfall Castle or over the wooded heights which extended behind Hythe? Worse ground for the manœuvring of cavalry it would have been hard for Volusenus to find. It would have been impossible for the cavalry transports of which I have spoken in the note on 22, § 4 to return from anywhere near Lympne or Hythe to Ambleteuse; and it would have been very difficult, if not impossible, to sail from Boulogne to Lympne or even to Hythe with a south-west wind. Furthermore, an episode which Caesar describes in ch. 32 is inexplicable on the theory that he landed at either of those places. He says that one day, when the 7th legion had gone out to cut corn, he learned from the troops on guard in front of his camp that an extraordinary quantity of dust was visible in the direction in which the legion had gone. The place where the legionaries were reaping was the only one in which the corn had not yet been cut; and the dust was raised by the enemy who were attacking them. But the dust would have been invisible from the camp unless the cornfield was close to the edge of the high ground; and who will believe that the only field which the Romans had left unreaped was the one nearest them? Again I leave unnoticed various reasons which prove that Caesar did not land anywhere west of the South Foreland.

East Kent alone remains. The *montes* off which Caesar anchored were the lofty cliffs between Dover and the Foreland; and a run of 7 miles brought him to the coast between Walmer Castle and Deal Castle. Only one serious objection has been made. Caesar says that he 'remained till the ninth hour, waiting at anchor for the other ships to join him'. The ninth hour ended at 3.30 p.m., and as high water at Dover on that day was at 6.21 a.m., the stream would *normally* have been running westward at 3.30 p.m. and would not have turned eastward till 5.24 p.m. This objection can be easily

disposed of. Supposing that Caesar's rough estimate of the time was correct, it is not certain that he weighed anchor immediately after the ninth hour; when the overdue ships arrived their skippers had, I suppose, to receive instructions, as the generals and military tribunes had done already; and to get the ships into order, to give the signal for starting, and to weigh anchor must have taken some time. Moreover, the time at which the stream turns depends greatly upon the wind; the wind, blowing in the same direction as the stream, would have accelerated the turn; and it has been proved by a series of observations that after high water at 6.21 a.m. the stream may have turned eastward before 3.54 p.m.

If the reader is interested in the subject, this note (which is necessarily a mere makeshift) will probably have suggested questions which he would like to have answered. If so, let him read the article to which I have referred at the beginning; and any doubt that he may feel will be cleared up.

aestum here means the tidal stream, which runs alternately up and down the Channel. In 29, § 1 the word is used, in the ordinary sense, of the *vertical* movement of the tides, as when we speak of high or low tide.

aperto ac plano litore,—'on an open and evenly shelving shore'. *Apertum litus* means a shore free from such obstacles or dangers as rocks, boulders, and the like (*L. C.*, i, 283–4; *A.B.*, pp. 629, 653–4).

24, § 1. *essedariis.* Remains of war-chariots have been found in British graves, principally in Yorkshire, but not nearly so many as in France. Yet the Gauls had evidently ceased to use them before the time of Caesar; for he never mentions them in describing his Gallic campaigns. Professor Ridgeway has suggested that the Gauls, who spent much money in buying well-bred horses (2, § 2), discarded chariots for cavalry when they began to import animals powerful enough to carry big men and to charge with effect. British horses, as we know from the skeletons that have been unearthed, were for the most part no bigger than ponies. It is a popular delusion that the British chariots had scythes (*A. B.*, pp. 342–3, 674–6).

§ 2. *militibus autem . . . desiliendum.* This passage has needlessly perplexed some commentators, one of whom actually suggested that the unhappy soldiers were obliged to walk several paces under water! They forgot that the ships' bows may have projected considerably, and also that when they were run aground they would have been buried for a considerable depth. Thus it would have been possible to jump into four feet six inches or five feet of water from the bow of a ship whose draught was a good deal more.

§ 3. *insuefactos.* I infer that the horses had been exercised on the beach in anticipation of Caesar's invasion.

25, § 1. *ad usum.* Schneider is, I think, mistaken in saying

that these words were added simply for the sake of rhythm. If Caesar had merely written *expeditior*, his apparent meaning would have been that the galleys were faster than the transports. But they were not only faster: they were also 'more free from impediment' (*expeditior*) for all purposes of navigation (*ad usum*, which is equivalent to *ad navigandum*,—in the widest sense); in other words, they were easier to turn and to stop, and could go astern by backing water. Thus *quarum erat motus ad usum expeditior* means 'which were swifter and easier to handle'.

latus apertum means 'the right flank', which was exposed (*apertum*) because the shield was worn on the left arm. This was denied by Stoffel, who maintained that the words simply meant 'the exposed flank',—left or right, as the case might be; but there are at least three passages in Caesar—iv, 26, § 3, v, 35, § 2, and vii, 82, § 2—which prove that *latus apertum* is a technical military phrase, and means what I have said. For the troops which are mentioned in each of these passages were exposed, as far as their *position* was concerned, on their left as well as on their right; and therefore either *latus apertum* signified 'the right and unshielded flank' or it signified nothing. See *C. G.*, pp. 621–3, the arguments in which have been accepted on the Continent as conclusive.

fundis, sagittis. Evidently Cretan and Numidian archers and Balearic slingers served on board the galleys.

tormentis. As the name, which is derived from *torqueo*, suggests, these engines derived their power from the recoil of tightly twisted cordage. The larger ones resembled huge cross-bows, the main difference being that instead of one bow there were two arms, connected by a rope which formed the bow-string. Those which were mounted in the turrets (iii, 14, § 4) of galleys were probably small catapults (*scorpiones*), which discharged bolts at point-blank range (vii, 25, §§ 2-4). See *C. G.*, pp. 582-3.

The illustration on the opposite page should make everything clear. It will be seen that the two arms of the engine were passed through the skeins of twisted cordage. A block, furnished with a hook which held the bowstring and which was itself held down by a trigger, could slide up and down in the groove. When the engine was loaded the block was forced back, despite the resisting cordage, by a windlass, and fixed by a catch which fitted into a row of teeth: when the missile was to be discharged the trigger was pressed, the bowstring was released, the recoil of the cordage caused the arms to fly back, and the missile sped on its way.

§ 2. *paulum modo*,—'(if) only a little', i. e. 'just a little'.

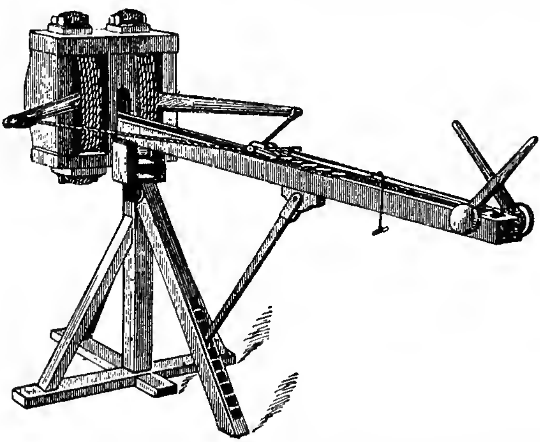
§ 3. *Atque* here leads up to a climax: it may be translated by 'And now'.

Why did the standard-bearer say *praestitero*, not *praestabo*?

26, § 3. *universos* does not mean all the Roman soldiers; for the line of ships from which they were landing must have been fully a mile long. The word is contrasted with *singulares* (§ 2) and means 'an entire group'.

§ 4. *speculatoria navigia* were small fast-sailing vessels of light draught, which were commonly used for reconnoitring, and would now be called 'scouts',—a name given to vessels of a certain class in the British navy.

§ 5. *neque* is evidently equivalent to *neque tamen*,—'but not'. *equites . . . potuerant*. Cf. 23, § 2 and 28, § 1. Evidently the wind had shifted to an unfavourable quarter, and the



cavalry transports, which had started too late, had been obliged to put back. The English equivalent of *capere* here is 'to make' (the island).

27, § 2. *demonstraveram*. Probably a beginner would be surprised that Caesar did not write *demonstravi*. He used the pluperfect as an English writer might have done if he had said, 'Commius, who, as I had related before I reached this part of the narrative', &c. But if he had chosen to use the perfect, as in 28, § 1, he would have written equally good Latin.

§ 3. *oratoris* does not here mean 'an orator', but 'an envoy'. Caesar's point is that Commius represented himself to the Britons as his accredited envoy, and therefore that they committed an outrage in seizing him. Cf. 21, § 8.

§ 5. *quod . . . intulissent*. See the note on *quod . . . fecissent* (22, § 1).

§ 7. *principes*, as the context shows, here means chiefs who were magistrates.

28, § 1. *post . . . quam* is of course equivalent to *quarto die postquam* (cf. 9, § 1). G. Long says that 'the expression had by usage got into a form which does not admit of strict grammatical analysis'; and the same may be said of such expressions as *a. d. V. Kal. Apr.* (i, 6, § 4) and 'this day six months'. I am inclined to think that originally in such phrases as *post diem quartum* and *ante diem quintum*, *post* meant 'at the end' (of the fourth day after) and *ante* 'at the beginning' (of the fifth day before).

§ 2. *castris.* Ten years ago (1902), after spending two days in examining the coast between Kingsdown and Sandown Castle, I concluded that the camp must have been either on the plateau between Walmer Castle and Kingsdown or, much more probably, on the rising ground, north-west of the plateau, which is now covered by part of Walmer. On opening the second volume of Napoleon's *Histoire de Jules César*, I found that Colonel Stoffel had adopted the latter alternative. Unfortunately it would be impossible to test our choice by excavation; for the ground is covered with buildings (*A. B.*, pp. 673-4, 737).

tanta tempestas . . . deicerentur. The ships that were swept down Channel (*deicerentur*) were in great peril because only the most watchful steering could prevent them from 'broaching to': if a heavy sea struck the stern, it might swing the vessel round, and in a moment she would be overset and founder. The others were doubtless 'laid to' on the port tack, carrying only just enough sail to keep them steady (*A. B.*, pp. 319, 582, 651, 740-1).

§ 3. *tamen* refers to *magno . . . deicerentur* and is closely connected with *ancoris iactis.* The meaning is 'they anchored notwithstanding' (the danger they were in).

adversa nocte. According to Schneider, *adversa* is equivalent to *obstante*,—'being unfavourable'; but if so, did Caesar mean that the ships stood out to sea *though* night was unfavourable to the voyage, or *because* it was unfavourable to their remaining where they were? I unhesitatingly reject the former alternative, for all Caesar's voyages between Gaul and Britain were made by night, and, moreover, on this particular night there was a full moon: on the other hand, it would not have been more dangerous to remain at anchor in the night than in the day-time. I agree with Kraner-Dittenberger, who hold that just as *adverso colle* (ii, 19, § 8) means 'up the hill', and *adverso flumine* (vii, 60, § 3) 'up the river', so *adversa nocte* means 'in the face of night', a translation which reminds one of Browning's famous line 'And into the midnight we galloped abreast'.

29, § 1. *qui . . . consuevit.* This statement is not quite accurate. Off the Kentish coast the highest tides—spring tides, as they are called—occur $2\frac{1}{2}$ days after full moon.

nostrisque . . . incognitum. There will always remain a doubt whether Caesar did not know more than he chose to admit: the

native skippers, who navigated his transports, which were of course Gallic vessels, could certainly have enlightened him.

§ 2. *et longas naves . . . adflictabat.* The difficulty presented by this passage is that no troops, so far as we know, had been carried in the galleys (*longas naves*), except artillerymen, archers, and slingers (25, § 1). Vielhaber deleted *quibus . . . curaverat*, and was therefore compelled to substitute *quas Caesar* for *quasque.* Meusel, who in his critical edition followed Vielhaber, afterwards adopted the emendation of Mommsen, who only deleted *longas* and *onerarias.* This emendation must, however, be rejected, because it implies that the transports—(naves) *onerarias*—were beached and that the galleys rode at anchor; whereas it is evident and is implied both in 24, § 2 and in v, 1, § 2 that the transports used in the expedition of 55 B.C. were too large to be beached, and that the galleys, which drew less water, were not. May we suppose that Caesar wrote (Ita uno tempore et) *longas naves, quas Caesar in aridum subduxerat, aestus complebat, et onerarias, quibus exercitum transportandum curaverat quaeque ad ancoras erant deligatae, tempestas adflictabat*? If this conjecture, of which I am not at all enamoured, will not do, I fear that we must follow Vielhaber (*C. R.*, May, 1912, p. 93).

exercitum is here, as often, used of the infantry in contradistinction to the cavalry.

§ 4. *possent.* The subjunctive is used because *quibus* is equivalent to *tales ut iis.* Cf. i, 6, § 1.

et, quod . . . non erat. Doubtless Caesar wrote *et . . . non* instead of *neque* in order to emphasize the negation. Any one can see that *neque, quod . . . provisum erat* would not do.

30, § 1. *sine impedimentis* need not be understood quite literally. Doubtless Caesar meant that he had taken no more baggage than was absolutely indispensable. For in vii, 10, § 1 he says that he 'left the heavy baggage of the whole army at Agedincum' (Sens); but 35, § 3 shows that he did take some with him.

§ 2. *rebellione* does not here mean 'rebellion'. Think of the derivation.

rursus coniuratione facta means 'they renewed their oaths of mutual fidelity. If we were to translate *coniuratio* by 'conspiracy', the religious character of the agreement would be lost sight of.

31, § 1. *ex eventu navium suarum.* 'From the fate of his ships' is not a satisfactory translation. I should say 'from what had happened to his ships'.

§ 2. *aere* here means 'bronze'.

eas res. Evidently Caesar was thinking not only of the repair of the hulls but of all the damage which had to be made good. See 29, § 3.

§ 3. *satis,* which probably fell out of the text, was added by

Rudolf Schneider. As the reader will see if he turns to 36, § 2, Caesar could only hope to make the ships tolerably seaworthy. Cf. i, 25, § 3; 39, § 6; iii, 13, § 6; 14, § 4.

32, § 1. *ex consuetudine* belongs more closely to *una*, which is emphasized, than to *missa*.

portis. The 'gates' were really openings, which could, on occasion, be barricaded. Cf. v, 50, § 5; vii, 41, § 4.

§ 3. *longius.* See the note on 35, § 2.

§ 5. *tum dispersos . . . circumdederant.* The officer who commanded the 7th legion had apparently forgotten to send out scouts; and it would seem that even the precaution of keeping some of the cohorts under arms was neglected (*A. B.*, p. 321).

33. § 1. *perequitant.* One of several instances in Caesar in which the subject of a verb is supplied from the context. Cf. v, 31, § 1; 40, § 1; vi, 9, § 1; vii, 79, § 3.

cum se . . . proeliantur. Most editors assume that *equitum turmas* means 'the [Roman] troops of cavalry'; but General A. von Göler, with whom I agree, argues that the charioteers penetrated within the intervals of their own cavalry, who protected them when they were jumping down to fight on foot, 'just as nowadays cavalry protect the limbering up and unlimbering of the horse-artillery associated with them.' The reasons which he gives are that Caesar had no cavalry [or rather, only 30 troopers (35, § 1)] in this campaign, and that if the British warriors had penetrated between troops of hostile cavalry, they would not have been able to get on to the chariots again, as Caesar (§ 2) says that they did (*A. B.*, pp. 676-7).

§ 2. According to Tacitus (*Agricola*, 12), the drivers were higher in rank than the warriors, who were their retainers.

§ 3. *sustinere* does not mean, as some editors with no practical experience explain, to 'check' the horses (which is here expressed by *moderari*), but 'to keep (them) in hand', so as to prevent their stumbling. I translate *ac tantum . . . consuerint* by 'they become so efficient from constant practice and training that they will drive their horses at full gallop, keeping them well in hand, down a steep incline, check and turn them in an instant', &c.

per temonem percurrere. This feat, as certain coins suggest (*A. B.*, p. 675), was performed not in order to show off, but in order to throw missiles at shorter range. Meusel, remarking that *uti in declivi . . . flectere* refers to the drivers, maintains that they, and not the warriors, must have run along the pole. What for? They were not performing in a circus. The earlier words *Ita mobilitatem . . . praestant* evidently refer to the warriors as well as the drivers; and it is clear that the subject of the whole sentence is *essedarii*, i. e. warriors and drivers. Which of the two is to be thought of as the subject of each verb is left to the reader's common sense.

34, § 1. *perturbatis nostris* is dative, though Schneider regards

it as ablative. Caesar regularly uses a dative with *auxilium ferre*.

The words *novitate pugnae* are certainly suspicious; but perhaps Meusel goes too far when he says (*J. B.*, 1910, p. 40) that, following *Quibus rebus*, they are impossible. Might not Caesar have added them by an afterthought to explain *Quibus rebus*? If they are genuine, they are of course a causal ablative. The Romans would not have been 'unnerved by these movements' if the tactics had not been new to them.

§ 3. *qui* . . . *reliqui*. These words are explained by two sentences in 30, § 2 and 32, § 1—*Itaque* . . . *coeperunt* and *cum pars* . . . *remaneret*—which show that during and after the attack on the 7th legion, and while the Roman soldiers were employed in various duties (*nostris omnibus occupatis*), those Britons who had not yet left their respective districts in order to rally round their leaders did so.

§ 4. *continerent*. See the note on 29, § 4 (*possent*).

§ 5. *equitatus* includes *essedarii*. The British cavalry only acted in support of the charioteers (33, § 1).

35, § 1. *superioribus diebus* is perplexing, for Caesar has just said (34, § 4) that during *complures dies* stormy weather had 'prevented the enemy from attacking': unless there is some serious omission in the preceding narrative, one must conclude that *superioribus diebus* is a loose expression, denoting the day on which Caesar arrived in Britain. Cf. 26, § 5.

ut. Any one can see that *ut* here means 'namely that'; but in English it would be better to suggest this meaning: 'Caesar foresaw that what had happened on previous days would happen again,—even if the enemy were beaten, their mobility would enable them to get off scot free'.

§ 2. *diutius*. We should say simply 'long'; but there is a reason for the comparative. It implies that the enemy did not continue to resist after the battle had fairly begun.

§ 3. *tanto spatio* . . . *potuerunt*. *Efficere* means 'to accomplish'; and Meusel (*J. B.*, 1894, p. 281) aptly refers to *B. C.*, iii, 102, § 1, —*quantum cumque itineris equitatu efficere poterat, cotidie progrediebatur*. I translate the words by 'as far as their speed and endurance would permit.'

36, § 2. *propinqua*. *Dies* in the singular is often feminine when it means a fixed day, and almost always when, as in i, 7, § 6, it means a period of time.

§ 3. *naves solvit*. See the note on 23, § 1.

§ 4. *onerariae duae* . . . *delatae sunt*. These two ships, which perhaps were in worse condition than the rest, kept a little too far out to sea, and thus failed to make the mouth of the Liane, —the entrance to the harbour of Boulogne.

37, § 2. *orbe* is here a technical military term. Obviously it does not denote a perfect circle; and a friend of mine, a very able officer of the Royal Artillery, suggests that it means an irregular

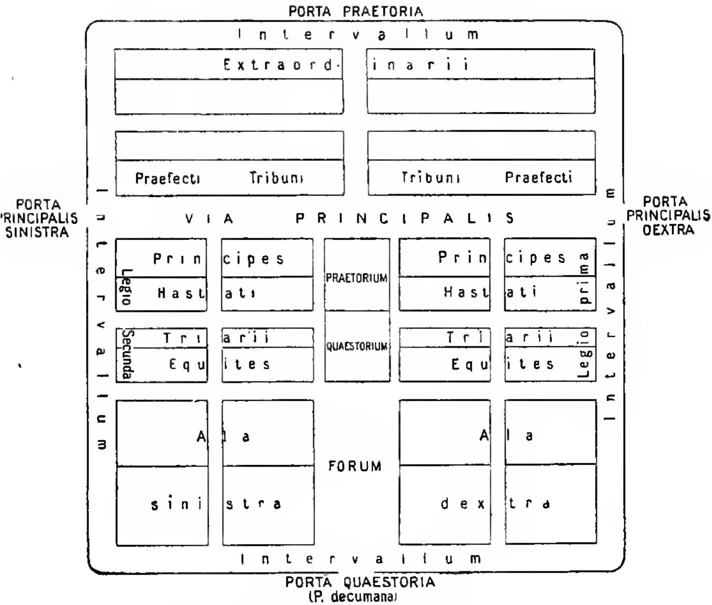
figure, approximating more or less closely to a circle or oval; for, as he points out, to dress the line properly, with the enemy pressing on to attack, would have been impossible (*C. G.*, p. 728).

ad clamorem,—'on hearing the uproar'. The sense of *ad* here is 'at', that is to say 'in consequence of'. Cf. R. Southey, *Joan of Arc*, vi, 50,—'At their voice He drew the strong bolts back.'

omnem . . . equitatum,—'all the [available] cavalry', namely those who had sailed for Britain but had been obliged to return (ch. 28) and those who had presumably been left with Sulpicius (22, § 6). The rest must have been assigned to Sabinus and Cotta (22, § 5, with which cf. 12, § 1).

38, § 1. *T. Labienum*. Labienus was the ablest of Caesar's generals and also the highest in rank. As *legatus pro praetore* (i, 21, § 2), he was Acting Governor of Gaul and Commander-in-Chief in the winter, when Caesar was generally in North Italy. Caesar used to go to Italy for the winter, partly in order to act as a judge and to transact other civil business in Cisalpine Gaul, partly to keep in touch with Italian politics and to look after his own interests.

§ 4. *Belgis*. The Belgae, who dwelt north and north-east of the Seine, were the latest Celtic invaders of Gaul.



THE CAMP OF THE LATER REPUBLIC

COMMENTARIUS V

NOTES

1, § 1. *L. Domitio . . . consulibus.* The consuls entered upon office on January 1, 700 (54 B. C.): therefore Caesar was unusually late in leaving the winter quarters of his army, though it must not be forgotten that the calendar was then in advance of the real time.

ut quotannis . . . consuerat. Caesar used to go to Italy for the winter, partly in order to act as a judge and to transact other civil business in Cisalpine Gaul, partly to keep in touch with Italian politics and to look after his own interests.

legatis. Legati, in the sense in which the word is used here, were generally, if not always, senators, and were as a rule appointed by the senate (Cicero, *Fam.*, i, 7, § 10); but Caesar, perhaps without consulting that assembly, could appoint *legati* himself (Cicero, *Att.*, ii, 18, § 3; *Q. fr.*, ii, 10 [12], §§ 4–5). *Legati* were expected to perform any duty with which their chief might entrust them. On Monday a *legatus* might be placed in command of a legion and lead it in battle (*B. G.*, i, 51, § 1; ii, 20, § 3, &c.); on Tuesday he might be sent to raise a fresh levy of troops (vi, 1, § 1). Several passages (i, 52, § 1; ii, 26, § 1; v, 1, § 1; 25, § 5; vii, 45, § 7) prove that in Caesar's time any *legatus* who commanded a legion was specially appointed to his command by Caesar and held it only so long as Caesar pleased. The office of *legatus* was passing through a transitional stage and gradually tending to crystallize into the form which it assumed under the empire, when the *legatus* became a *legatus legionis* (*C. G.*, pp. 563–4).

§ 2. *propter crebras . . . fieri.* This is not the true explanation. The comparative smallness of the waves in the Channel is due to the shallowness of the water and its contraction within narrow limits.

in reliquis . . . maribus,—in the various arms of the Mediterranean, which had their several names, *Hadriaticum mare, sinus Ligusticus*, &c.

§ 3. *actuariae naves*, as one might infer from the words *quam . . . adiuvat*, were constructed both for rowing and sailing.

imperat fieri. Caesar only uses *impero* with the infinitive in the case of passive and deponent verbs, except in one instance (*B. C.*, iii, 42, § 2), where an active and a passive are associated, —*Eo partem navium longarum convenire, frumentum . . . comportari imperat*; and in this case, as Meusel remarks in a note on the passage, he would probably have written *iubet* if he had remembered that *convenire* preceded.

§ 4. *Ea . . . iubet.* The esparto grass of Spain was in great demand for making ropes. The iron and copper required for

anchors and other purposes were, I suppose, fetched from the mines of Gaul. Cf. iii, 21, § 3; iv, 31, § 2; vii, 22, § 2.

§ 5. *conventibus.* The word *conventus* is used by Caesar in the sense of an assembly or meeting (i, 18, § 2) of the community of Roman citizens living in a provincial town (*B. C.*, iii, 29, § 1, &c.), and, as in this passage, of judicial or administrative business performed by himself, as Governor, in an assembly of Roman citizens or provincials. As he went on circuit, like a judge, through Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum to discharge these duties, we may translate *conventibus . . . peractis* by 'After finishing the assizes in Cisalpine Gaul'.

Illyricum extended east of the Adriatic, as far southward as Epirus and Macedonia and eastward as far as Moesia.

§ 6. *cum venisset.* As Mr. W. E. P. Pantin explains in his lucid chapter on 'The Conjunction *Cum*' (*Macmillan's Latin Course: Third Part*, p. 60), '*Cum* with a subjunctive puts before us the *circumstances* in which the action represented by the principal verb takes place', whereas *cum* with the indicative tells us 'only how one action is related to another with regard to the *time* of its occurrence'.

§ 7. *legatos.* The reader will notice in the course of the narrative that Caesar uses the word *legatus* in two senses, which can always be easily distinguished. Sometimes, as in 1, § 1, the word denotes one (or more) of the generals who served under him; sometimes, as in the present instance, it means an envoy or ambassador.

satis facere. Caesar often uses *paratus* with an infinitive, but, as in 5, § 2, &c., he also uses it with *ad* and the gerundive.

§ 8. *certam.* *Dies* in the singular is often feminine when it means a fixed day, and almost always when, as in i, 7, § 6, it means a period of time.

§ 9. *litem,*—'the matters in dispute' [between the several tribes].

2, § 2. *cuius* is explained by what grammarians call an ellipsis. Caesar meant *cuius generis naves.*

longas. 'Long ships', or galleys, were of various kinds: everybody is familiar with the terms 'bireme', 'trireme', &c. What class these particular *naves longae* belonged to we are not told: but Caesar's narrative (iv, 25, § 1) shows that they were shallow; and I doubt whether any of them had more than one bank of oars (see M. le Contre-Amiral Serre, *Les marines de guerre de l'antiquité*, 1885, p. 36). *Naves longae* were not always even decked (*B. C.*, i, 56, § 1; iii, 7, § 2).

neque multum abesse . . . possint—'and that it was not far from the possibility of their being launched in a few days'—means in plain English 'and [that they] would be ready for launching in a few days'. After *ab eo* one might expect *ut*; but *ab eo* does not affect the construction, the negative requiring *quin*. If any one will ponder the passage, he will see that the

thought is rather loosely expressed. Caesar would perhaps have made his meaning clearer—to a beginner—if he had either omitted *paucis diebus* or written (as in iii, 18, § 4) *neque longius abesse quin paucis diebus*, &c.

§ 4. *expeditis.* When this word is used of troops it does not always mean the same thing. When troops who were just going into action are called *expediti* (vii, 11, § 8; 40, § 1; *B. C.*, iii, 85, § 4, &c.) we are to understand that they were free from every burden that would have interfered with their fighting,—in other words, that they were not carrying their packs (*sarcinae*). But these four legions were starting on a march which would last several days, and therefore could not do without their packs or even a certain amount of baggage. *Expeditis* therefore means that they took no more baggage than was absolutely necessary: it may be translated by 'in light marching order'.

equitibus. In the Gallic war Caesar's cavalry consisted entirely of foreigners,—Gauls, Spaniards, and in the last two campaigns (52 and 51 B.C.) if not before, Germans. They were often commanded by their national chiefs (viii, 12, § 4). See *C. G.*, pp. 579-81.

quod hi . . . parebant. Three years before, the Treveri had sent a body of cavalry to assist Caesar in his campaign against the Belgae; but they had deserted in the battle with the Nervii, and, as Caesar says (ii, 24, § 5), 'told their countrymen that the Romans were disastrously defeated.' Unless he recalled them to obedience, it was probable that while he was in Britain Gauls and Germans would raise a rebellion in his rear.

concilia. In the spring of every year Caesar convened a diet of the Gallic chieftains, partly perhaps to test their temper, partly to fix the strength of the cavalry contingents which their respective tribes were to provide. Cf. iv, 6, § 5; v, 24, § 1; vi, 3, § 4.

Transrhenanos is added in order to show that the Belgic tribes—the Condrusi, Eburones, Caerosi, Paemani, and Segni—whom Caesar called Germans (ii, 4, § 10; vi, 32, § 1), are not meant.

3, § 1. *totius Galliae* is equivalent to *totius Galliae civitatum.*

§ 2. *principatu.* It is doubtful whether in this passage *principatus* means, as in vi, 8, § 9, 'the chief magistracy' or simply unofficial supremacy.

§ 4. *Arduennam.* Our 'Forest of Arden' in Warwickshire shows another form of the word.

§ 5. *principes* seems to mean simply 'leading men'; it does not, as for instance in vii, 65, § 2 and 88, § 4, denote magistrates. Some of the *principes*, whom Caesar frequently mentions, were certainly magistrates, and perhaps these were; but the word, *as such*, rarely bears that meaning.

quoniam here takes the subjunctive because Caesar is not

stating the reason merely as his own, but as present in the minds of the conspirators.

§ 7. *fidei* here has the sense of *tutelae*.

4, § 3. *cuius . . . perspexisset*. The subjunctive is not due merely to the Oratio Obliqua: it is used because the clause gives the reason for Caesar's having wished to do honour to Cingetorix.

§ 4. *factum* is a substantive.

suam . . . minui. If, as I believe, these words are genuine, they explain and are in apposition with *Id*; but Meusel (*J. B.*, 1910, pp. 36–7) brackets them.

qui . . . fuisset. Again the subjunctive is used because a reason is implied:—'*whereas* he had already been', &c.

5, § 1. *Caesar . . . pervenit*. Caesar left Blandeno in Cisalpine Gaul about the 30th of April (of the Julian calendar) and, after the movements described in ch. 2–4, arrived at Portus Itius about the 11th of June. He had therefore posted across Gaul at the rate of 50 miles a day or more; and there is no more conclusive proof of the hold which he had already obtained upon the Gallic tribes than the fact that he was able to count, as securely as in Italy, upon finding horses ready for each successive stage (*A. B.*, pp. 329, 727).

§ 2. *factae erant . . . erant profectae*. The first *erant* is intelligible enough, for the clause *quae . . . erant* is not part of the Oratio Obliqua. The second is explained by grammarians in the same way; but to my mind the explanation is, by itself, hardly sufficient, for *unde erant profectae* seems at first sight inseparable from *eodem*, which *is* part of the Oratio Obliqua. Probably Caesar, having written *eodem*, added *unde erant profectae* (which is not dependent upon *cognoscit*) to make his meaning clear.

§ 3. *principes*. See the first note on 3, § 5.

6, § 1. Dumnorix (see p. 4) had been detected four years before in intriguing against the Romans; and Caesar had placed him under close observation.

§ 2. *quod* is here, as often, used in the sense of 'the fact that'; but this ugly expression should always be avoided if possible. One might translate *Accedebat . . . dixerat* by 'Moreover, Dumnorix had stated', &c.

dixerat . . . deferri. Various writers have suggested that Caesar really had made this offer to Dumnorix, in order to purchase his support. It seems to me more likely that Dumnorix had made the statement in order to exasperate the Aedui against Caesar. Still, Caesar may have thrown out some vague hint which led him to expect that if he proved himself loyal he would be rewarded.

neque is evidently equivalent to *neque tamen*,—'but not'.

hospitibus. By the Roman institution called *hospitium privatum* agreements were concluded between individual Roman

citizens and individual foreigners, under which the former were entitled to receive hospitality from the latter. It has been remarked that this practice must have been very useful in places where the accommodation of inns was not available. Provincials upon whom the members of a governor's staff were billeted were also called *hospites* (Cicero, *Att.*, v, 10, § 2).

§ 3. *quod insuetus . . . timeret.* The subjunctive is used because the clause is not a statement of fact made by Caesar, but gives the gist of Dumnorix's plea. The explanation of *diceret*, as the reader will understand, if he thinks, is different. The subjunctive is here, strictly speaking, illogical: the verb is, as it were, attracted into the subjunctive from that verb to which the subjunctive properly belongs: in other words, *partim quod . . . diceret* is equivalent to *partim quod, ut dicebat, religionibus impediretur.*

religionibus means 'religious obligations'.

§ 5. *nobilitate*, as we may infer from vi, 13, §§ 1–3, does not mean 'the nobility' or 'the nobles', but simply 'men of rank': in other words, it does not denote a definite class, like our peerage, but merely the most prominent members of the class which Caesar (vi, 13, § 3) calls *equites*, or knights. For in vi, 13, immediately after saying that in Gaul there were only two classes which were held in any esteem, and immediately before saying that 'one of the two classes consists of the Druids, the other of the Knights', he makes this remark:—'Generally, when crushed by debt or heavy taxation or ill-treated by powerful individuals, they [the common people] bind themselves to serve *men of rank* (*plerique cum aut aere alieno aut magnitudine tributorum aut iniuria potentiorum premuntur, sese in servitutem dicant n o b i l i b u s*). If the *nobiles* had formed a definite class, superior to the *equites*, Caesar would have said that there were only *three* classes which were held in any esteem.

§ 6. *fidem.* Not *suam*, which Caesar would have expressed, as in 36, § 2, but *reliquorum*: he 'interposed their pledged word' as a bar to their leaving Gaul; in other words, he made them promise to stay. Doberenz-Dinter are surely wrong in taking *reliquis* as meaning all except Dumnorix himself, that is to say, all those with whom he had intrigued: it is opposed to *principes* (§ 4).

7, § 2. *longius . . . videbat.* The force of the comparative may be expressed by this translation,—'his frenzy was evidently passing all bounds'.

§ 3. *commoratus* is not exactly equivalent to the present participle. As Madvig says (*Lat. Gr.*, § 431. b), the past participle of deponents is often used 'to indicate the motive, occasion [as here], or manner of the main action'.—'For about twenty-five days . . . he was kept waiting. . . . Accordingly he did his best to keep Dumnorix steady,' &c.

Corus ventus may be translated by 'the north-west wind';

but as the ancients had no compasses, they could not tell with mathematical precision the point from which the wind was blowing. In Caesar's time the circle from any point of which the wind may blow was divided into twelve equal parts; and accordingly the wind called *Corus* may have blown from any quarter between NW. and W. by N. ⅓ N. (*A.B.*, p. 555, n. 2).

§ 5. *cum equitibus Haeduorum.* In 58 B.C. Dumnorix had commanded the Aeduan cavalry which served under Caesar; and apparently he did so still. Why Caesar accepted or employed as commander of this allied force a man whom he so thoroughly distrusted, we do not know; probably he was unwilling to provoke him to open opposition until he felt able to get rid of him.

§ 6. *retrahi.* See the note on 1, § 3 (*imperat fieri*).

§ 7. *neglexisset.* See the note on 4, § 3.

§ 8. *enim.* Not without hesitation I retain the MS. reading instead of *autem*, which occurs in an inferior MS. and in the first printed edition of the *Commentaries*. In several passages some MSS. have *autem*, others *enim*. Some editors explain *enim* by an ellipsis; and the following translation of *nihil . . . resistere* will show what they mean:—'for he thought that a man who disregarded his authority when he was present would not behave rationally in his absence. [And he was right in so thinking;] *for* when called upon to return he resisted', &c. Sometimes, however, as Schneider points out, *enim* means much the same as *scilicet*, and so here it would be equivalent to 'as might have been expected' (from what has been said before about his character). But connecting particles are often used in Greek and Latin when a good English writer would use none; and the best way of translating *enim* (or *autem*) here would be to ignore it.

§ 9. *hominem.* The word here shows animosity, while in 58, § 6, as we shall see, *hominis* implies admiration. *Circumsistunt hominem* might be translated by 'surrounded the fellow'.

8, § 1. Labienus was the ablest of Caesar's generals and also the highest in rank. As *legatus pro praetore* (i, 21, § 2), he was Acting Governor of Gaul and Commander-in-Chief in the winter, when Caesar was generally in Italy. See v, 1, § 1.

portus. The plural shows that in 54, as in 55 B.C. (iv, 22, § 4), Caesar found it convenient to keep more than one harbour under control.

§ 2. *naves solvit* means 'loosed the ships' (from their fastenings) and generally connotes the operation of letting go a hawser and putting off from shore or quay.

Africo must be translated by 'south-west wind', and is so called because it was the most favourable wind for ships sailing from Carthage to Sicily. It may have blown from any point between SW. and W. by S. ⅓ S. See the second note on 7, § 3.

aestu. Caesar was carried out of his course (*delatus*) by the

flood tide, the general direction of which was ENE. On the night of the 6th of July (of the Julian calendar)—the date on which, as we may infer from Cicero's correspondence, Caesar most probably sailed (*A. B.*, pp. 728–30)—the stream began to run up the Channel about ten o'clock; for it turned westward again (§ 3) soon after daybreak (*A. B.*, p. 658).

sub sinistra . . . conspexit. As Caesar was drifting towards the North Sea, he saw the white cliffs of East Kent (see the first note on 9, § 1) receding on the port quarter (*sub sinistra*).

§ 3. *aestus . . . contendit.* The Romans had a system of naval signalling, and either by this means or by oral instructions conveyed from vessel to vessel the order was given to go about and run down with the stream. If the ebb tide had served throughout, it would not have been necessary to row hard in order that the whole fleet should reach Britain before noon. In *A. B.*, pp. 655–9, I have shown that so long as it was possible to follow the tide, the work of the rowers was easy, but that when, probably not far from the spot where the South Sand Head Light Vessel is moored, the ships' heads were turned in the direction of Sandwich, they encountered a cross-current setting towards the south-west.

ut . . . cognoverat does not necessarily mean that Caesar intended to land at exactly the same place at which he had landed in the preceding year. See the first note on 9, § 1.

§ 4. *vectoriis . . . navigiis.* I do not know whether Kraner is right in taking these ablatives as absolute. Their sense is concessive; but are they not also instrumental?

adaequaverint. See the note on 4, § 3.

§ 6. *cum* is used here in the sense which grammarians call 'concessive'. Any one who reads the sentence carefully will understand why they have chosen this word. But instead of translating *cum* by 'though', which would here be clumsy, it would be better to bring out the meaning of the long Latin sentence (§§ 5–6) in this way:—'The ships all reached Britain about midday, but no enemy was visible: large numbers, as Caesar found out afterwards from prisoners, had assembled at the spot, but, alarmed,' &c.

privatisque . . . fecerat. These vessels presumably belonged to merchants who had dealings with the troops or to adventurers who had been attracted by delusive stories about the wealth of Britain.

DCCC is nominative: *amplius*, with which Caesar invariably omits *quam*, does not affect the case.

superiora loca,—the high ground near Canterbury, north of the Great Stour. See the note on *Illi equitatu . . . munitum* (9, §§ 3–4).

9, § 1. *loco . . . capto.* It has been shown in the note on iv, 23, § 6 that Caesar landed in 55 B.C. between Walmer and Deal. He unquestionably landed in the same 'part of the

island' (v, 8, § 3)—that is to say, in East Kent—in 54; for it is incredible that he should have landed in 55 on one side, and in 54 on the other side of the South Foreland; and before his fleet hove in sight in 54 the Britons assembled in great force to oppose his landing (8, § 6), which shows that they felt sure that he would attempt to land at or near the place where he had landed the year before (*A. B.*, pp. 603-4). But most probably the place was not exactly the same. As we shall presently see (§§ 2-3), on the morning after the disembarkation Caesar fought an action on the banks of the Great Stour about 12 miles from his camp, and the camp must therefore have been in the neighbourhood of Sandwich. Moreover, Caesar tells us (§ 1) that when he quitted the camp he felt little anxiety for his ships, as he was leaving them at anchor on a nice open shore; and, although no other commentator has noticed the fact, any one can see that he was here excusing himself for not having hauled his ships ashore, notwithstanding the severe lesson which the storm of the previous year had given him (iv, 29), by the plea that he had selected a more favourable anchorage. The anchorage in the Small Downs is much more secure than in the Downs (*A. B.*, pp. 664-5).

cohortibus X were equivalent to one legion; but as Caesar does not say *una legione*, we may infer that the cohorts were selected from the five legions.

de tertia vigilia is generally explained as meaning 'in the third watch', though Caesar sometimes writes *tertia vigilia*, &c. without *de*. I am not quite sure that *de* does not mean 'just after' (the beginning of the third watch). For military purposes the Romans divided the period between sunset and sunrise into four watches of equal length, the third of which began at midnight.

litore . . . aperto means 'a nice open shore'. *Mollis* denotes a shore where the anchorage was good, and where the ships, if they were driven aground, would suffer comparatively little. I do not think that Schneider is right in arguing that *mollis* should be translated by 'gently sloping', though that meaning is doubtless implied. Professor J. P. Postgate, who agrees with me, has kindly referred me to a passage in Ovid (*Ep. ex Ponto*, i, 2, 61-2)—

Cum subit Augusti quae sit clementia, credo
Mollia naufragiis litora posse dari—

which seems to justify my explanation. Professor Postgate remarks that while *aperto* describes the approach to the shore, which was not blocked by rocks, *mollis* connotes both a gentle slope and a soft surface (*A. B.*, pp. 628-30). Caesar, in his anxiety to march against the Britons, took the risk of not hauling his ships up on shore, an operation which would have consumed valuable time. See the note on *loco . . . capto*. But he made a mistake, which cost him dear. See ch. 10-11.

§ 3. *essedis.* Remains of war-chariots have been found in British graves, principally in Yorkshire, but not nearly so many as in France. Yet the Gauls had evidently ceased to use them before the time of Caesar; for he never mentions them in describing his Gallic campaigns. Professor Ridgeway has suggested that the Gauls, who spent much money in buying well-bred horses (iv, 2, § 2), discarded chariots for cavalry when they began to import animals powerful enough to carry big men and to charge with effect. British horses, as we know from the skeletons that have been unearthed, were for the most part no bigger than ponies. It is a popular delusion that the British chariots had scythes (*A. B.*, pp. 342–3, 674–6).

§§ 3–4. *Illi equitatu . . . munitum.* As Caesar landed between Walmer and Sandwich, the river behind which the Britons were posted must have been either the Great Stour or the Little Stour. The Little Stour above Bekesbourne is now generally dry; but after prolonged heavy rains there may be plenty of water. In May, 1902, I walked along the bank, and there was not a teaspoonful in the channel: in April, 1904, the stream was running strongly past Barham. It may therefore have been a *flumen* in 54 B. C., though we must not forget that both in 55 and 54 the summer, at all events in Gaul, was exceptionally dry (iv, 38, § 2; v, 24, § 1). Nevertheless Caesar did not encounter the Britons on the Little Stour. The *locus superior* which he mentions was either the left bank of the stream or high ground near the left bank. Now even at Bekesbourne the dry channel of the Little Stour is only about two feet deep; and although there are well-defined heights on the left bank between Barham and Bridge, the lowest slopes, except opposite Kingston and for a short space on either side of it, are at a considerable distance from the channel. If Caesar had crossed (as Colonel Stoffel believed) at or near Kingston, the Britons could have opposed him more effectually when he was ascending Barham Downs than by attempting to defend the passage of the rivulet. And since he would in any case be obliged to cross the Great Stour, is it not obvious that they would have waited for him behind the river, which might fairly be called an obstacle, rather than on the banks of the streamlet, which an active lad could have jumped? If, as I believe, he marched along the line of the Roman road from Sandwich to Canterbury, he crossed the Little Stour at Littlebourne, where it is wider: but Littlebourne is barely 9 miles from Sandwich; and Caesar had marched about 12 Roman miles when he first saw the British troops. Deal is about this distance from Littlebourne; but in the note on § 1 I have given reasons for believing that Caesar had encamped some miles north of Deal; and on the left bank of the Little Stour near Littlebourne there is no trace of a British camp.

The Great Stour, below Fordwich, would have been impassable

in Caesar's time in the face of an enemy; for it flowed through a broad morass. It appears to me that he must have crossed it either between Fordwich and Sturry, or in the neighbourhood of Thanington, just above Canterbury, or possibly at Canterbury itself; and I am sure that any one who will carefully examine the ground will agree with me. The stronghold to which the Britons retreated was probably a camp in Bigbury woods, about a mile and a half west of Canterbury, of which traces still exist; and it therefore seems most likely that Caesar forced the passage of the river between Canterbury and Thanington (*A. B.*, pp. 335-7, 678-85).

§ 6. *propugnabant*, coupled with *ex silvis*, implies that the scattered groups fought by throwing missiles.

prohibebant, as the context shows, means 'tried to prevent'.

§ 7. *testudine facta.* In this formation the men in the front rank held their shields before their bodies, while those behind bore theirs closely locked above their heads. Why the formation was called a *testudo* is self-evident.

aggere may here be translated by 'lumber': it does not mean 'an *agger*', or terrace. The word primarily means material—earth or what not—piled up in order to form a rampart, an embankment, or some other military structure, or (as in this passage) shot into a ditch with the object of filling it up. Caesar uses the word in various kindred senses, which can always be distinguished, without a dictionary, by a little thought. Probably the work of piling the lumber was performed by men who advanced between the files under the protection of their comrades' uplifted shields (*A. B.*, p. 337).

§ 8. *eos* is governed by *vetuit*, not by *prosequi*.

10, § 1. *in expeditionem misit* does not mean 'sent on an expedition'. As Schneider says, we may infer from viii, 8, § 3 that *expeditio* is equivalent to *iter a militibus expeditis suscipiendum.* The words might be translated by 'sent a light force'.

§ 2. *cum iam . . . prospectu.* Meusel, like Schneider, explains these words as meaning 'when the rear *of the enemy* was just in sight'. But Caesar was not present with any of the three Roman columns: therefore, if Meusel's explanation is right, he must have ascertained afterwards that the rear of the fugitives was just visible to his troops at the very moment when he himself, separated from the troops, received the news of the shipwreck. This seems to me impossible. Meusel, however, insists that his explanation is proved by the word *iam*, and that if Caesar had meant that the rearguard of his own troops was in sight, he would have written, not *iam* but *tantum* (only) or *etiam tum.* Mr. A. G. Peskett (*C. R.*, 1908, p. 94), who agrees with me, remarks that 'the omission in Latin of the (to us) necessary qualifying word "only" is easily defensible'. If this explanation is inadmissible, I can only suppose that Caesar wrote *tantum*, not *iam* (*A. B.*, pp. 686-7; *J. B.*, 1911, p. 100).

gubernatores. Nowadays seamen take turns in steering a ship on the prescribed course; but when there were no compasses steering was necessarily entrusted to specialists. The *gubernator*, who might be loosely compared to the master in a ship of Nelson's time, had to observe sun, moon, and stars in order to know where he was, fixed the course of the ship, steered her or directed the steersman, and also performed on occasion the duties of a pilot.

11, § 1. *atque . . . resistere.* Meusel (*J.B.*, 1910, pp. 50–1; 1911, p. 100), remarking that *in itinere resistere* can only mean 'to defend themselves as they marched', argues that if Caesar had meant this, he would have added some such phrase as *si ab hostibus impetus fieret*, and that, as the enemy were in full retreat, no attack was to be feared. I have no doubt that the enemy would have regarded the recall of the legions as a sign of fear; but I agree with Meusel that the passage is suspicious. See *A.B.*, pp. 687–8.

§ 2. *reliquae . . . viderentur.* I am inclined to believe that Meusel is right in conjecturing that Caesar wrote *reliquae refici posse, magno tamen negotio viderentur.* If the MS. reading is right, *tamen* is used in what is called a concessive sense, and means 'at any rate' or 'at least'.

§ 3. *fabros.* See *C. G.*, p. 579.

§ 4. *naves instituat.* These ships were undoubtedly built in the dockyards at Gesoriacum (Boulogne); for there could have been no appliances for ship-building at Wissant. But this is not enough to prove that Labienus's camp was at Boulogne, though most probably it was (*A. B.*, p. 584; *C. G.*, p. 434).

§ 6. Schneider apparently takes *ad* as equivalent to *quod attinet ad* ('as regards'): I believe with Meusel (*L. C.*, i, 138) that its force is final, and that the literal meaning is 'not even the hours of night being left out with a view to'—that is, 'which could be devoted to'—(the work). We should say 'the troops not suspending work even in the night'.

§ 7. *Subductis navibus.* The ships were doubtless hauled up in the usual way,—by capstans over greased logs, which the Romans called *phalangae*.

§ 8. *cuius fines . . . LXXX.* Caesar means, I suppose, that the distance from the place where he landed to the eastern frontier of Cassivellaunus's kingdom was about 80 miles. Meusel argues that Caesar could not have written these words: but in fact he only brackets *a mari . . . LXXX*; and his argument leaves me unconvinced. He urges that the passage could only make sense if the Thames had flowed from north to south instead of from west to east, for it did not really separate the territories of Cassivellaunus from those of the maritime tribes, namely, the tribes of the south-east. Moreover, he argues, a later statement (18, § 1)—*Caesar . . . ad flumen Tamesim in fines Cassivellauni exercitum ducit*—proves that the Thames

flowed *through* the territories of Cassivellaunus, and therefore did not separate them from those of the maritime tribes. Surely the passage means 'Caesar led his army to the Thames, into the territory of Cassivellaunus',—i. e. to the Thames, after crossing which he would find himself in the territory of Cassivellaunus. Caesar knew nothing about the upper Thames; but any one who looks at the map and notices the sharp north-eastward bend which the river makes from Weybridge to London will see that he might very well have said that it separated the territory of Cassivellaunus from the maritime tribes. Klotz (*C. S.*, p. 49, n. 5) acutely remarks that if we follow Meusel in bracketing this passage, we must suppose that Caesar mentioned Cassivellaunus, the most important of the British chieftains, without saying one word to indicate where his kingdom was, although he did so in the cases of the minor chiefs (22, § 1).

§ 9. *toti bello imperioque.* Cf. § 8. This expression seems to imply that the *imperium* included the general direction of the campaign and might be used in concluding alliances, making peace, &c.

12–14. Oddly enough Meusel does not bracket these chapters in his latest edition (1908), though both he (*J. B.*, 1910, pp. 29–31) and Klotz (*C. S.*, pp. 43-50) give reasons for doing so. Meusel points out that neither Pliny (*Nat. Hist.*, iv, 16, § 102) nor Tacitus (*Agricola*, 10) mentions Caesar among the writers whom they quote in their descriptions of Britain; and he objects, further, that *Belgium* (12, § 2) means the whole territory of the Belgae, whereas in the passages (24, § 2; 25, § 4) in which the word is used by Caesar it means only a part of their territory, and that in 14, § 1 *his* is meaningless. This last remark seems to me hypercritical; and does not Caesar use the words *Gallia* and *Galli* both in a general and in a restricted sense? Klotz argues, as other critics, including Meusel, have done, that the description of Britain breaks the connexion of the narrative, and that several expressions in the three chapters could not have been used by Caesar. Undoubtedly the description interrupts the story; but so does the digression on the manners and customs of the Gauls and Germans (vi, 11–24), the authenticity of which is indisputable. Klotz concludes that the 'Pseudo-Caesar' used Timagenes as an authority, and that for much of the description the original source was Posidonius. But there is no evidence that Posidonius was ever in Britain (*A. B.*, p. 499, n. 2); and the mention of iron 'currency-bars' (*taleis ferreis* [12, § 4]) and of water-clocks (13, § 4) must have come from an eye-witness. If he was not Caesar, the interpolator, when he wrote *Nos nihil . . . videbamus*, was also a liar. Still, I bracket the chapters, because if Meusel and Klotz have not proved that they are spurious, they have given sufficient reasons for suspecting their authenticity. See, however, the first note on 22, § 1.

12, § 2. *iis nominibus . . . pervenerunt.* Only two of the known British tribal names correspond with Belgic tribal names,—namely, those of the Atrebates and the Catuvellauni, neither of whom are mentioned by Caesar. This sentence is an example of the kind of loose construction called Anacoluthon; for *quibus* belongs to a different noun from that which is coupled with its antecedent, *iis*.

§ 3. *aedificia* in Caesar generally means 'homesteads' or 'granaries'.

§ 4. *aere.* The earliest of the British bronze coins that have been found are some years later than the time of Caesar (*A. B.*, p. 294). For this reason most editors, following Mommsen, now delete or bracket *aut aere*; but if ch. 12–14 were interpolated by a late writer, the words may be genuine.

nummo aureo. Numerous British gold coins have been discovered. The earliest were struck about 150 years before Caesar's invasion; and the types were derived mainly from Gallic coins or through Gaul from coins of Philip of Macedon, which had found their way into Gaul through the medium of the Greek merchants of Massilia (Marseilles). Until about 30 B. C. they were uninscribed (*A. B.*, pp. 248–50).

taleis . . . nummo. A large number of these iron bars have been unearthed; and one of the hoards contained 394 specimens. They may be arranged, according to their weight, in four groups, the heaviest being twice as valuable as the next, four times as valuable as the third, and eight times as valuable as the lightest. Not a single bar has come to light in the eastern and south-eastern counties, where coins are most abundant (*A. B.*, pp. 250–1; *P. S. A.*, xxii, 1907–9, pp. 338–43).

§ 5. *in mediterraneis regionibus.* I can only account for this mistake by the following suggestion. According to Strabo (iii, 5, § 11), Publius Crassus—probably the Crassus who was sent by Caesar in 57 B. C. to occupy Brittany (*B. G.*, ii, 34)—sailed to the Cassiterides, or 'tin-islands', and obtained information about the tin-mining. If I am right in identifying the Cassiterides with the British Isles (*A. B.*, pp. 483–98), Crassus sailed from Brittany to Cornwall. He may have contented himself with landing on the coast, where the tin was delivered to the merchants: if so, he was doubtless informed that the tin was actually won in the interior, as, in literal truth, it of course was; and Caesar (or the writer of *B. G.*, v, 12–14) may have concluded from his report that the mines were far from the coast.

ferrum. The iron mines were in the Wealden Forest of Sussex, and were not finally abandoned before the nineteenth century.

aere utuntur importato. This statement is not absolutely false, but it is misleading. Both in the Bronze Age and in the Early Iron Age, which began in Britain about 400 B. C., the Britons did import certain articles of bronze, but most of

their bronze was of course of domestic manufacture (*A. B.*, pp. 144, 237, 246).

fagum. If the writer meant the beech, he made a mistake. Discoveries which have been made in submerged forests and in deposits of the Bronze Age prove that the beech existed here long before the Romans first landed in Britain (*A. B.*, pp. 661–2).

§ 6. *Leporem . . . putant.* In regard to this superstition see *A. B.*, p. 55 and nn. 3–4.

animi here means 'pastime'. A moment's thought will suggest how the word got this meaning. Caesar uses *animi* alone in a similar sense in vii, 77, § 10, but doubtless he added *voluptatisque* from his usual desire to explain one word by another and thus make his meaning unmistakable. As Schneider remarks, *animi* by itself might have been taken to mean *doloris evitandi.*

13, § 1. *quo* refers to *angulus,* not to *Cantium.*

inferior . . . spectat. The writer, like most ancient geographers, thought that Southern Britain was roughly parallel with the coast of Gaul, which, they supposed, extended nearly in a straight line from the Rhine to the Pyrenees. The famous explorer, Pytheas of Massilia (Marseilles), who was contemporary with Alexander the Great, knew better (*A. B.*, pp. 217–21, 352; *C. G.*, p. 466, n. 3).

§ 2. *transmissus* is a genitive depending upon an ablative of quality. After *atque* must be understood *eo quod.*

§ 3. *Mona* is evidently the Isle of Man, not Anglesey, which had the same name.

non nulli . . . noctem. In regard to the origin of this misleading statement see *A. B.*, pp. 225–6. Pytheas of Massilia, who explored Britain about the time of Alexander the Great, appears to have been informed that the northernmost of the British Isles was situated on or near the Arctic Circle.

§ 4. *certis . . . mensuris.* In regard to the 'water-clocks' of the Romans see W. Smith's *Dict. of Greek and Roman Antiquities,* 3rd ed., i, 972–5 (s. v. HOROLOGIUM).

§ 6. *angulus,* if the MSS. are right, means (its) 'corner', i. e. the eastern corner. H. Hartz was perhaps right in proposing *alter* instead of *lateris.*

maxime . . . spectat. The meaning is *si ad aliquam terram spectat, maxime spectat ad Germaniam.* I translate the words by 'looks, if anything, in the direction of Germany'.

§ 7. *milium* is a genitive of quality. Cf. the familiar line 'Came a nurse *of* ninety years'.

14, § 2. *Interiores . . . serunt* is inaccurate. Archaeological evidence proves that corn was grown in the interior even in the Bronze Age (*A. B.*, pp. 151–2, 224, 253–4, 260, 267).

pellibusque sunt vestiti. Here again the writer was imperfectly informed. Woollen and linen clothes were worn even in the

Bronze Age; and numerous spindle-whorls have been found in dwelling-places both of that period and of the Early Iron Age (*A. B.*, pp. 160–1, 264).

§§ 4–5. *Uxores . . . deducta est.* This custom, which is called polyandry, certainly did not exist among the Celts—this is one of the reasons which have led some critics to deny that these three chapters were written by Caesar—but it may perhaps have survived among certain primitive communities in remote districts.

15, § 1. The narrative, which was interrupted after ch. 11, is here resumed; and if 12–14 were not written by Caesar, there is of course no interruption. Fighting apparently recommenced when Caesar, returning from the coast after 10 days' absence (11, § 8), was approaching the valley of the Great Stour. The enemy's cavalry and charioteers then commenced a fierce running fight (*in itinere*) with Caesar's Gallic cavalry.

fuerint. If Caesar had written *essent*, he would, so to speak, have been placing the reader at the standpoint of a spectator; whereas the perfect merely states the fact that the Romans had the upper hand without calling upon the reader to form a mental picture of the fight.

§ 4. *primis.* See the note on 28, § 3.

§ 5. *tribunus militum.* Although Caesar, in order to oblige politicians who might be useful to him, occasionally granted sinecure tribuneships to men who had no experience of war (Cicero, *Fam.*, viii, 8, § 1), numerous passages in the *Gallic War* (ii, 26, § 1; iii, 14, §§ 3–4; v, 52, § 4; vi, 39, § 2; vii, 47, § 2; 62, § 6) prove that the duties of tribunes in general were most important (*C. G.*, pp. 565–7).

16, § 1. *Toto . . . pugnae* evidently does not mean 'in all this sort of fighting', for one particular fight is referred to. The words, as Schneider remarks, are equivalent to *in tota hac huiusmodi pugna*; and the best translation that I can think of is 'Throughout the whole of this peculiar combat'.

neque ab signis discedere auderent might be translated by 'and they dared not abandon their regular formation'. The standards played so important a part in action as rallying points for the men that Caesar constantly uses the word *signa* in phrases in which it cannot be translated literally.

§ 3. *Equestris autem . . . inferebat.* Meusel (*J. B.*, 1910, p. 47) is, I think, right in bracketing these words; and all commentators have recognized that it is very difficult, if not impossible, to explain them. They cannot refer to a combat between the Roman and the British cavalry, for the British cavalry only acted in support of the charioteers. Therefore, if they were genuine, they could only refer to a combat between the Roman cavalry and the combined British charioteers and cavalry, and the meaning would be either (1) '*On the other hand*, the mode in which the British *cavalry* fought [in co-operation with the

charioteers] exposed the Romans, alike in retreat and in pursuit, to exactly the same danger', or (2) '*In fact* the nature of the combat of horse [that is to say, the combat between the Roman cavalry and the combined British charioteers and cavalry] exposed the Romans', &c. But the passage, which is not in the first printed edition of the *Commentaries*, is at least suspicious (*A. B.*, pp. 688–91). The difficulty which Caesar found in dealing with the charioteers was partly due to the fact that his army, like all Roman armies, was weak in cavalry,—and in cavalry of the right kind. If he could have taken to Britain one of those German squadrons with their attendant light infantry which so effectively supported him in the war with Vercingetorix, he would have had less trouble (*A. B.*, pp. 342–3, 354).

§ 4. *stationesque dispositas haberent.* These *stationes* corresponded with what Caesar in ii, 22, § 1 calls *subsidia*, that is to say, 'reserves'. The word sometimes means 'piquets', but not here.

integrique . . . succederent, as the thoughtful reader will see, completes the sense of *atque alios . . . exciperent.* In English the words would be expressed by a participial clause,—'fresh vigorous men taking the places of those who were tired.'

17, § 2. *ab signis legionibusque.* See the note on 16, § 1 (*neque ab signis discedere auderent*) and do not be satisfied with the translation 'from the standards and the legions', which is not only hideous but does not express Caesar's meaning.

§ 4. *sui colligendi.* Notice that although *sui* is plural, the gerundive is singular, because the genitive plural of *se* is identical in form with the genitive singular (*L. C.*, iii, 1968–9). No Italian would have written *sui colligendorum.* Madvig, however (*Lat. Gr.*, §§ 297^b, 417), who denies (§ 85) that the reflexive pronoun has a genitive, takes *sui* as the neuter singular of the possessive (*suus*).

§ 5. *summis* is here equivalent to *universis* or *cunctis*; and the sense is (from that time the enemy never encountered us) 'in a general action'.

18, § 1. *Caesar . . . duxit.* Caesar must have marched either by the trackway on the line of which the Romans afterwards made the road called Watling Street, or along the southern slope of the chalk escarpment and across the Medway at Aylesford or Halling. All the Roman and pre-Roman antiquities that have been discovered in Kent, west of a line drawn from Reculver through Canterbury and Lympne to Romney, have come from sites clustering along these routes (*A. B.*, p. 344).

18, § 1. The name 'Watling Street', applied to the road between Canterbury and London, is a popular misnomer.

quod flumen . . . transiri potest. Although numerous attempts have been made, it is impossible to determine the spot where Caesar crossed the Thames. There are only two places for which a shred of real argument has been adduced,—'Coway Stakes', about a furlong west of Walton Bridge, and Brentford.

'Coway Stakes' is close to Halliford; and Dr. E. Guest pointed out that between Hurleyford (about $2\frac{1}{2}$ miles west of Great Marlow) and the sea Halliford is the only place 'bearing a name which indicates a ford over it'. But that name originated after the Anglo-Saxon invasion; and we do not know whether there was a ford near Halliford in the time of Caesar. At Brentford a line of stakes, which Mr. Montagu Sharpe identifies with the *acutis sudibus* of § 3, extended some 30 or 40 years ago for about a mile up the river from a point opposite the mouth of the Brent; and he shows that 'no other ancient stakes have been discovered in the lower river during dredging operations': but of course it cannot be proved that the stakes in question were those which Caesar mentions. Indeed the latter must have been displaced or their points sawn off by the Romans, though the ford may have been staked again by the Britons after Caesar's departure (*A. B.*, pp. 692–8, 742; *A. J.*, 1906, pp. 25–39).

§§ 4–5. *His rebus cognitis . . . mandarent.* This excessively laconic passage seems at first sight hard to explain. What happened was probably this. The cavalry were sent behind cover to swim the river close by, where it was not obstructed by stakes; and at the right moment the infantry plunged into the water and advanced to the attack. Caesar had calculated that the Britons would be distracted by the onset of the cavalry upon their flanks and rear; but the infantry were determined to have the credit for themselves. We may suppose that, while they were removing the stakes or sawing off their points, the slingers and archers (see ii, 7, § 1) were able to harass the enemy. It has been objected that *praemisso* 'must mean that Caesar sent the cavalry across the river, ordering the infantry to follow [immediately behind] them'. But such an operation would have been absolutely impossible: the word *Sed* proves that the infantry in their ardour crossed before the cavalry could charge; and *praemisso* simply means that when Caesar was approaching the river he sent on the cavalry in advance (*A. B.*, pp. 345–6, 698–9).

§ 5. *cum.* See the first note on 8, § 6.

19, § 1. *milibus . . . essedariorum.* Does this mean that Cassivellaunus had 4,000 chariots, or 2,000 charioteers with 2,000 warriors (see iv, 33, §§ 1–2)? I adopt the former explanation; but I am not quite sure (*A. B.*, p. 675).

§ 2. *effuderat.* Caesar almost always uses the indicative with *cum* to express repeated action.

§ 3. *tantum . . . poterant. Quantum* is not commensurate with *tantum*, for the actual damage was to be done by the cavalry, and their capacity for doing damage was limited by the capacity of the infantry, which protected them, for marching. The meaning is 'that an amount of damage should be done corresponding with the work which the infantry could

do', &c. This translation will serve:—'to injure the enemy as far as the legionaries' powers of endurance would allow.'

20, § 1. Mandubracius had evidently crossed the Channel with Caesar. I infer from the narrative that the embassy of the Trinovantes was dispatched before Caesar had advanced far into the interior, and doubtless as soon as he had proved his superiority. As the Trinovantes were evidently antagonistic to the Catuvellauni—the tribe over whom Cassivellaunus ruled—we may be sure that if they had been forced to join the league against Caesar, they were half-hearted.

fidem secutus. See the note on 3, § 7.

§ 3. *imperiumque obtineat.* These words are added in order to show that Mandubracius was not only to rule, but to rule with full powers, not as a dependant of Cassivellaunus.

21, § 2. *oppidum Cassivellauni.* See p. 78.

§ 3. *Oppidum . . . munierunt.* Caesar would have modified this description if he had seen the great hill-forts (most of which were erected in the Bronze Age and even earlier) of Wiltshire, Somerset, and Dorset. Nearly all the heights on which these forts were erected are covered with soil so thin that they never could have been thickly wooded, and if trees had encumbered their sides, they would have been cut down; for the object of the engineers was to leave no ground on which an enemy could conceal himself (*A. B.*, pp. 136, 255–7).

22, § 1. *quod esse . . . demonstravimus* refers to 14, § 1, and if ch. 12–14 are spurious, this passage must be also. But the existence of this passage is one of the facts which make me doubt whether, after all, 12–14 are not genuine. For if *quod esse . . . demonstravimus* was interpolated, Caesar said nothing to show where Cantium was.

castra navalia. See 11, §§ 5–7.

§ 2. *Lugotorige.* Lugos was a Celtic deity, whose name appears also in Luguvallum (Carlisle) and Lugudunum (Lyons).

§ 3. *Atrebatem Commium.* Commius, who had considerable influence in Britain, had been appointed king over the Atrebates after the campaign of 57 B.C. and had accompanied Caesar on his first expedition (iv, 21, § 7; 27, § 2; 35, § 1).

§ 4. *propter . . . motus.* The meaning is 'because disturbances were likely to break out', &c.

penderet. The imperfect is permissible because *constituit* is an *historic* present. Even in English some writers, notably Carlyle, in telling a story, use the present tense instead of the past when they feel that it is more vivid. Still, Caesar generally uses the present subjunctive in indirect questions after the historic present (*J. B.*, 1894, p. 354). Mommsen (*H. R.*, v, 66) says 'it is certain that the stipulated tribute was never paid',—a mere assertion which is not only improbable, but is opposed to such evidence as we possess (*A. B.*, p. 356). No doubt payment was stopped after Caesar left Gaul; but Mommsen

did not fully appreciate the hold which he could exert over Cassivellaunus through hostages. Hostages in those days were meant to be used. Besides, when Caesar was disobeyed, he said so frankly (iv, 38, § 4).

§ 5. *interdicit atque imperat* means 'strictly forbids', *imperat* being added to strengthen *interdicit*. Schneider is surely wrong in likening this expression to *praecipit atque interdicit* (58, § 4), for there the troops were ordered to do one thing and forbidden to do another.

23, § 1. *exercitum . . . mare*. Caesar omitted to mention that, escorted probably by a small flying column, he had made an earlier visit to the coast on or before the 1st of September (the 5th of August of the Julian calendar). This is attested by a letter which he wrote on that day to Marcus Cicero (*Q. fr.*, iii, 1, § 25). Perhaps he desired to see for himself that the defences of the naval camp (22, § 1) were secure against any future attack, to reinforce the garrison, and to ascertain what progress had been made in the repair of the fleet (*A. B.*, pp. 348-9, 672, 731-3).

§ 3. *tot navigationibus* is, I believe, ablative absolute. Anyhow its force is concessive.

§§ 3-4. *portaret . . . remitterentur*. The subjunctives are due to Attraction of Mood,—in other words, to the influence of *desideraretur* and *reicerentur* respectively.

24, § 1. *Subductis navibus*. Ships were generally beached for the winter, in order to prevent their timbers from rotting. Can any reader suggest what became of these ships—800 or more—which Caesar, as far as we know, never used again?

concilio. See the note on 2, § 4 (*concilia*).

§ 2. Quintus Cicero was a *legatus*, as we learn from one of his brother's letters (*Fam.*, i, 9, § 21).

in Remis . . . Treverorum. If Caesar's narrative is correct, Labienus was still in the country of the Remi towards the end of 54 B.C.; for Caesar says (53, § 2) that Indutiomarus, who had been on the point of attacking Labienus, returned into the country of the Treveri (*copias omnes in Treveros reducit*). In vi, 5, § 6, however, Caesar says that he sent the baggage of the whole army into the country of the Treveri to Labienus, and in vi, 7, § 1 he says that the Treveri were preparing to attack Labienus and the legion which was wintering in their territory: but he does not say that Labienus had transferred his camp from the country of the Remi to that of the Treveri; and Napoleon III argues that Labienus must have remained throughout the winter in his original camp, because, after the destruction of Sabinus's force (v, 26–37), it would have been very dangerous for him to move. Most probably, then, the camp was really in the country of the Treveri, though it was very near the common frontier of the Remi and the Treveri (*in*

confinio Treverorum); and we may suppose that in vi, 5 and 7 Caesar corrected the mistake which he had made in v, 24 (*C.G.*, pp. 732–4).

§ 3. *M. Crassum*,—a son of the celebrated Roman millionaire, who, with Pompey and Caesar, formed the first triumvirate.

quaestorem. The provincial quaestor, as distinguished from the quaestors who served at Rome, acted as Paymaster-General, managed the details of the commissariat, and was responsible for all financial business. Caesar, however, employed quaestors, like *legati*, as commanders of legions (i, 52, § 1; iv, 22, § 3; v, 25, § 5; 46, § 1; 53, § 6; vi, 6, § 1). In 58 B.C. he had only one quaestor; but in 54 at all events (v, 25, § 5) he had two or more.

§ 4. *Unam legionem . . . misit*. This legion, as we learn from vi, 32, §§ 3-4, encamped at a place called Atuatuca, the geographical position of which is discussed on pp. 407–8. The positions of all the other camps have of course been guessed at; but, except that of Trebonius, which was at Samarobriva (Amiens) (ch. 46–7; *C. G.*, p. 371, n. 1), not one of them is known.

The mention of the five cohorts which formed part of Sabinus's force has caused some perplexity. We know that Caesar had at least eight legions in 54 B.C.; for when he entered Gaul he had four (i, 7, § 2; 10, § 3): he raised two more in the same year (i, 10, § 3), and two more in the year following (ii, 2, § 1). We may be sure, however, that he had not only eight but nine in 54 B.C.; for *proxime* in § 4 of the chapter which we are reading means *nuper*, as it does in vi, 32, § 5, and therefore the legion *quam proxime trans Padum conscripserat* must have been raised in the winter of 55–54 B.C. But what about the *cohortes V*? They were certainly veterans; for otherwise Caesar, after saying that the legion had been recently raised, would not have omitted to add that the five cohorts were recruits. But if they were veterans, they must have belonged to one or more of the other legions. Now, although we have just seen that Caesar had nine legions in this year, there is reason to believe that they were only equivalent to eight and a half, for Sabinus's newly raised legion and his five cohorts were annihilated in the autumn (v, 37): three new legions were raised in the following year (vi, 1, § 4); and at the end of that year Caesar had ten. General A. von Göler suggested that the five cohorts of Sabinus's brigade belonged to one of the old legions, and that the men who belonged to the remaining five of the same legion were drafted into those legions which had lost most by death or disease. If von Göler is wrong, Sabinus's five cohorts must have been detachments from other legions: in other words, Caesar, although he had nominally ten legions in 53 B.C., only had the equivalent of nine and a half, five of the ten having each only 9 cohorts. It seems to me more probable that von Göler is right (*C. G.*, p. 732, n. 1).

§ 7. *milibus . . . continebantur.* If the reader will ponder these words, he will see that they can only mean that none of the camps was more than 100 miles from any other. If Caesar really wrote *C*, he made a mistake, for it is certain that Atuatuca, the camp of Sabinus and Cotta (see the note on § 4), was much more than 100 miles from Samarobriva (Amiens), where one of the legions encamped. See ch. 46–7 and *C. G.*, pp. 371–3.

§ 8. *munitaque hiberna.* Permanent camps, intended to be occupied throughout the winter, were of course fortified more elaborately than the temporary camps which were constructed at the end of each day's march (*C. G.*, pp. 586–7).

25, § 1. *cuius maiores . . . obtinuerant.* Evidently the last of Tasgetius's ancestors had either been dethroned or succeeded by an oligarchical government. Such revolutions (see p. xlii) were common in Gaul in the century that preceded the arrival of Caesar.

§ 3. *inimici.* Do not forget the distinction between this word and *hostes.*

palam . . . auctoribus may be translated by 'with the avowed sanction of many of the citizens'.

auctoribus. Remember that *auctor* does not always mean 'author' or 'originator'. Sometimes it is equivalent to *qui probat aliquid*.

26, § 2. *fines* here, as also in 46, § 4 and 54, § 2, evidently means 'frontier'.

Indutiomarus had been obliged a few months before to give Caesar 200 hostages, among whom were all his own kinsmen (4, §§ 1–2); but we may infer from vi, 2, § 1 (*Interfecto Indutiomaro . . . ad eius propinquos a Treveris imperium defertur*) that Caesar, after he returned from Britain, had thought it best to restore them. When one reads v, 22, § 4 one finds it hard to conceive why he did so.

If *nuntiis*, as Meusel thinks, meant 'messengers', not 'messages', would not *ab* be necessary? Cf. ii, 2, § 1; 14, § 1; vii, 48, § 1.

§ 3. *altera Germanis.* I have no doubt that either these words, which were supplied by R. Sydow, or possibly *altera Gallis*, were written by Caesar. There was no reason why he should emphasize *una* if cavalry were not sent out from any other side. It is remarkable that no further mention is made of the cavalry in the following narrative (32–7).

§ 4. *aliqui.* This is the only passage in Caesar in which *aliqui* is substantival. Cf. Cicero, *Pro Sulla*, 13, § 39.

27, § 1. *eques Romanus.* In Caesar's time the Roman *equites* were the class engaged in business—banking, money-lending, and the like—which senators were forbidden to take part in (though they found ways of evading the law), and comprising all whose property exceeded in value 400,000 sesterces (about

£3,333); but originally the *equites* were the cavalry, who were selected from the wealthiest citizens.

qui . . . consuerat. Evidently Ambiorix had made himself useful to Caesar as a political agent, and the acts of kindness for which he professed gratitude were presumably the reward which he received for his services.

§ 2. *quod* does not mean 'because', but, as in many other passages, serves to explain a preceding word,—here *beneficiis.* A translation will make this clear,—'He would admit that he was deeply indebted to Caesar for various acts of kindness, having by his good offices been relieved of tribute', &c. Where *quod* means simply 'because', as in 24, § 1, the meaning is unmistakable.

ei, as the learner has perhaps noticed, is used instead of *sibi.* Other instances occur in the *Commentaries*; but to lecture Caesar for inaccuracy, as some editors do, is foolish. It would be wiser to observe how he used the language of which he was a master and to modify grammatical rules.

§ 3. *fecerit.* The primary tense, following four secondary tenses—*liberatus esset*, &c.—is remarkable; but in relative clauses of this kind Caesar often uses the perfect subjunctive even when secondary tenses of the subjunctive precede and follow (*J. B.*, 1894, pp. 362–3). See the note on § 4 (*potuerit*).

suaque . . . multitudinem. It has often been said that these words are inconsistent with what Caesar says in vi, 13, § 1,—that 'the masses are regarded almost as slaves, never venture to act on their own initiative', &c. Perhaps they are: but if so, the case of Ambiorix was the exception that proves the rule; and I am not quite sure that *multitudo* here means the whole 'multitude' of Ambiorix's host. Perhaps it only means the 'knights' or influential landowners (vi, 13, § 3) and their retainers; for in vii, 63, § 6 *multitudinis* can only bear this meaning. In viii, 8, § 3 (*consilio advocato . . . animos multitudinis confirmat*) *multitudo* plainly denotes only the officers who were present at a council of war; while any one who compares viii, 7, § 4 with 22, § 2 will see reason to doubt whether, if *multitudinem* does mean 'the multitude', Ambiorix told the truth (*C. G.*, pp. 529–41, and especially pp. 532–3, 536–7).

§ 4. *potuerit*, says Meusel (*J. B.*, 1894, pp. 364–5), is very surprising, for it follows five secondary tenses of the subjunctive (*liberatus esset*, &c.), and immediately follows a perfect infinitive,—*fuisse.* 'I can only suppose', he says, 'that *quod*-clauses of this kind, which do not depend upon the principal sentence, could be treated like independent relative clauses in Oratio Obliqua,' in which, as in § 3, Caesar frequently uses the perfect subjunctive even when secondary tenses of the subjunctive precede and follow. I confess that I see nothing surprising in *potuerit.* Meusel apparently forgets that it is preceded by *fecerit* (§ 3); and I have no doubt that in both cases Caesar

used the primary tense because Ambiorix was describing what had only just happened, whereas in § 2 he described what had happened some time before. Cf. ii, 4, §§ 2, 4.

sit . . . confidat. The present was used because the subjunctives were preceded by a present infinitive, *posse*; and the primary tenses in §§ 7–11 are to be accounted for on the same principle.

§ 6. *videretur.* It is perhaps needless to point out that the literal meaning of *videretur* is 'was seen', not 'seemed'. *Praesertim . . . videretur* may be translated by 'especially as the object of the movement was, of course, to recover national liberty'.

§ 7. Beware of translating *pietate* by 'piety'.

hospitio. See the note on 6, § 2 (*hospitibus*).

§ 9. *Ipsorum esse consilium,*—'It was for them [the Roman generals] to decide'.

28, § 3. *primorum ordinum centuriones.* Who were the 'centurions of the first rank'? No less than eight theories have been devised about them; but it is, I believe, now generally admitted that they were the six centurions of the 1st cohort in each legion. For the ten cohorts in each legion were numbered; the 1st ranked above the rest (15, § 4); and it may therefore be presumed that all took rank according to their numbers. That this was the case under the Empire is certain; for the 10th cohort was the lowest. Moreover, a centurion was promoted in the civil war 'from the 8th class to the rank of *primipilus*', or chief centurion of the legion; and Modestus, a centurion who had served for eighteen years in four grades of rank, held the position of *hastatus posterior* in the 3rd cohort, which accords with the supposition that the 3rd cohort ranked below the first two, but above all the rest. A passage in Tacitus (*Hist.*, iii, 22) shows that in the time of the Emperor Galba there were not less than six *primorum ordinum centuriones* in the 7th legion. Lastly, it is proved by inscriptions that the centurions of the 1st cohort known as *primus pilus prior, primus princeps prior*, and *primus hastatus prior* were the first three centurions of the legion; and the natural conclusion is that the 4th, 5th, and 6th centurions of the 1st cohort also ranked above all the centurions of the other cohorts (*C. G.*, pp. 567–79).

§ 4. *rem . . . quod.* Meusel takes this to mean 'the fact that'. May it not mean 'The facts of the case (proved this), because'? I translate the words by 'Experience proved this; for', &c.

sustinuerint. See the first note on 27, § 4.

§ 6. *esset* is the reading of α: β has *esse.* This is a rhetorical question: therefore the infinitive answers to one of the rules which grammarians have framed for Oratio Obliqua. But the rule does not derive much support from the MSS. of the *Commentaries.* The subjunctive is found in rhetorical questions in all the MSS. in i, 40, § 2; 43, § 8; v, 29, §§ 5–7; and *B. C.*, i, 32,

§ 3; and in the first and last of these passages the indicative would certainly have been used in Oratio Recta.

29, § 2. *Caesarem arbitrari.* Ciacconius may have been right in supposing that Caesar wrote *Caesarem se arbitrari*; but there is a similar omission of the reflexive pronoun in 36, § 2 and in ii, 4, § 10.

adesset. In English one would say '(if Caesar) *had been* at hand', and a beginner would probably wonder why he did not write *adfuisset.* But in Oratio Recta Sabinus would have said (neque, si ille) *adesset* (tanta contemptione nostri ad castra) *venissent*, and if in Oratio Obliqua *adesset* had been changed into *adfuisset*, the meaning would have been 'if Caesar had been at hand during the attack and had afterwards departed'.

§ 3. *Sese . . . spectare*,—'It was not to the enemy that he looked for guidance, but to facts'.

Ariovisti mortem. See p. 4. How and in what circumstances Ariovistus was slain is not known; but the remark which Caesar ascribes to Sabinus points to the conclusion that he was killed by Roman hands. It has been suggested that he may have died from a wound received in the battle which is described in i, 52.

§ 5. *persuaderet.* See the note on 28, § 6.

§ 6. The omission of *se* before *perventuros* is harsh: perhaps Meusel is right in conjecturing that Caesar wrote *omnes.*

§ 7. *haberet.* See the note on 28, § 6.

30, § 1. *primisque ordinibus.* The word *ordo*, which in 28, § 3 means *centuria*, is here used (by the figure which grammarians call metonymy) in the sense of *centurio*,—that is to say, *primis ordinibus* is equivalent to *primorum ordinum centurionibus.* Similarly in English one of the musicians in an orchestra is called 'the first violin'. In vii, 62, § 4 *primi ordines* is used in a totally different sense.

§ 3. The learner should ask himself why Caesar wrote *liceat* and *sustineant* instead of *liceret* and *sustinerent.* If he does not know, he can find out with a little trouble.

31, § 3. *permotus* is equivalent to *graviter animo commotus.*

§ 4. *circumspiceret.* See the first sentence of the note on 22, § 4 (*penderet*). In the next sentence an historic present is followed by a present subjunctive; but the reader will see that an imperfect would there be impossible.

§ 5. *Omnia excogitantur . . . augeatur.* It has been argued that this passage is out of place and originally stood in § 3 after *perducitur*; while Meusel (*J. B.*, 1910, pp. 46–7), following Mommsen, who says (ib., 1894, p. 207) that, in its existing context, it must mean 'Everything is done in order to make the march as dangerous as possible and to tire out the soldiers beforehand' (!), and who regards it as a 'scathing rebuke' of Sabinus, condemns it altogether as an interpolation. I do not agree with either of these views, and I subjoin my own

translation of §§ 4–5, to show how naturally the passage reads as it stands:—'An order was issued that the troops were to march at daybreak. The men stayed up for the rest of the night, every one looking about to see what he could take with him, what part of his winter's kit he would be forced to leave behind. Men thought of every argument to persuade themselves that they could not remain without danger, and that the danger would be increased by protracted watches and consequent exhaustion,' &c. (*C. G.*, pp. 726–7).

§ 6. *esset.* The subjunctive is causal.

33, § 1. *providisset.* In English the force of the subjunctive can be suggested:—'And now Titurius, having exercised no forethought, lost all nerve,' &c.

haec . . . ut. I need not tell the reader what words must be mentally supplied immediately after *ipsa* and immediately before *ut.*

viderentur. See the note on 27, § 6.

§ 2. *auctor.* See the note on 25, § 3 (*auctoribus*).

§ 3. *in orbem consisterent.* *Orbis* here is a technical military term. Obviously it does not denote a perfect circle; and a friend of mine, a very able officer of the Royal Artillery, suggests that it means an irregular figure, approximating more or less closely to a circle or oval; for, as he points out, to dress the line properly, with the enemy pressing on to attack, would have been impossible (*C. G.*, p. 728).

§ 6. *haberet.* The subjunctive is due to Attraction of Mood.

34, § 1. *barbaris* should not be translated by 'barbarians'. The word 'natives', which, as used by Englishmen in speaking, say, of natives of India, often implies some contempt, will do better.

§ 2. *Erant . . . pares.* These words are untranslatable. Two inferior MSS. have *pugnando*; and if this reading were adopted, the literal translation of *Erant . . . nostri* would be, 'Our men were equally matched [with the enemy] in fighting, both in respect of courage and numbers,' or, in idiomatic English, 'Our men were as brave as they and not overmatched in point of numbers.' H. J. Heller conjectures that Caesar wrote (et virtute et) *studio* (pugnandi); but Meusel (*J. B.*, 1910, p. 57) brackets *Erant . . . pares*, because (1), as the narrative shows, the Romans were outnumbered by the Eburones; (2) if the subject of *erant* is *nostri*, Caesar, as we may infer from iii, 14, § 8, would certainly have said that in valour the Romans were *superiores*; and (3) if the subject is *Eburones* or *utrique* understood, he would never have admitted that the Eburones were as brave as the Romans. The first of these reasons seems to me the best.

§ 4. *ad signa recipientes.* See the second note on 16, § 1.

35, § 2. *eam partem*,—i. e. *cohortem.*

ab latere aperto means 'on the right flank', which was exposed

(*apertum*) because the shield was worn on the left arm. This was denied by Stoffel, who maintained that the words simply meant 'on the exposed flank',—left or right, as the case might be; but besides this passage there are at least two others in Caesar—iv, 26, § 3 and vii, 82, § 2—which prove that *ab latere aperto* is a technical military phrase and means what I have said. For the troops which are mentioned in each of these three passages were exposed, as far as their *position* was concerned, on their left as well as on their right; and therefore either *ab latere aperto* signified 'on the right and unshielded flank' or it signified nothing. See *C. G.*, pp. 621–3, the arguments in which have been accepted on the Continent as conclusive.

§ 3. *coeperant.* See the note on 19, § 2.

§ 4. *vellent.* The subjunctive leaves it uncertain whether the soldiers did or did not intend to hold their ground; and it is necessarily followed by an indicative (*relinquebatur*): for if Caesar had written *relictus esset*, he would have meant that they had had no such intention. See *J. B.*, 1894, p. 374.

§ 5. *ad horam octavam.* The Romans divided the period between sunrise and sunset into 12 hours, which of course were only equal in length to our hours at the equinox.

pugnaretur. Meusel (*J. B.*, 1894, pp. 389–90) remarks that in expressions of this kind (iii, 5, § 1; vii, 80, § 6) Caesar generally uses the imperfect where one would have expected the pluperfect. I do not think that I would have expected it: the imperfect pictures the long-drawn-out battle more vividly. When Caesar does use the pluperfect, as in i, 26, § 4, he wishes to show that the fighting was over.

§ 6. *qui superiore . . . duxerat* is equivalent to *qui primipilus fuerat*, for *pilum*, which, remember, comes from *pilus*, not *pilum*, means the same as *triariorum manipulum*: in other words, Balventius had in the previous year been the chief centurion of his legion. But why was he not still? Probably he had served his full time and was now serving again as an *evocatus*, or volunteer; for it is evident from the way in which Caesar speaks of him that he had not been degraded (*C. G.*, pp. 577–8).

§ 7. *eiusdem ordinis. Ordo* is here used in the sense of 'rank', 'grade', or 'position'. See the note on 30, § 1. There is nothing to show whether Lucanius belonged to the same cohort to which Balventius had belonged or to the 1st cohort of some other legion. In the latter case the cohort must have been one of the five which are mentioned in 24, § 4.

§ 8. *ordines* of course here means 'centuries'. See the note on 30, § 1.

in adversum os. The adjective shows that the stone flew not obliquely, but from the front and struck Cotta full in the face. The preposition is used as if Caesar had written (lapide qui funda) *in adversum os* (missus erat).

36, § 1. *Cn. Pompeium.* The interpreter was doubtless a Gaul

belonging to the Roman Province, who had taken the name of his Roman patron.

§ 2. *sperare.* I doubt whether it is necessary to follow Meusel's example and add *se*, which is not in the MSS. See the first note on 29, § 2.

37, § 1. Kraner takes (in) *praesentia* as accusative plural,—'with a view to existing circumstances'. I have little doubt that Meusel is right in regarding it as ablative singular. There is a certain instance of the noun *praesentia* in 43, § 4.

§ 3. *ordines* here apparently means 'ranks'.

§ 6. *se ipsi interficiunt* is generally taken to mean, not that each individual committed suicide, but that the men killed one another. The Latin might of course bear either meaning; but the latter is suggested by Livy, *Epit.*, 110 (*auxiliares . . . inter se concurrentes occubuerunt*), and Lucan, iv, 556–66.

38, § 2. *sui . . . liberandi.* See the note on 17, § 4.

39, § 2. *qui . . . discessissent.* I am inclined to think that here, as in 33, §§ 1–2, the subjunctive is causal, Caesar accounting for the capture of the soldiers by their having gone to fetch wood; but Meusel (*L. C.*, iii, 1507) regards it as due to Attraction of Mood. See the note on 33, § 6.

lignationis is explained by *munitionisque.* The wood was required, at all events in part, for the purpose of fortification. Cf. 40, § 2.

§ 3. *Eburones . . . clientes.* Grammatically the Eburones, Nervii, and Atuatuci are to be regarded as one group and their allies and dependents as another: otherwise, as the learner will see if he remembers how copulative conjunctions are used in Latin, *atque* would be incorrect.

clientes here means dependent tribes. A state which had 'clients' exercised over them whatever power it could; and some clients were less dependent upon the same state than others. Thus the Ceutrones, &c., were under the *imperium* of the Nervii, and therefore had to render military service when required to do so, and probably also to pay tribute, as the Eburones did to the Atuatuci (v, 27, § 2); but the Carnutes, although they were clients of the Remi, were evidently not under their *imperium*, for they rebelled against Caesar when the Remi remained loyal (vi, 4, § 5). Client tribes certainly managed their own internal affairs, and, as we learn from vi, 12, §§ 6–8, occasionally transferred their allegiance from one powerful state to another (*C. G.*, pp. 517–19).

40, § 1. *ad Caesarem.* Caesar was at Samarobriva (Amiens). Cf. 46, 47, §§ 1–2.

§ 2. *turres admodum CXX.* If we suppose that the towers were only 80 feet apart, as they are said to have been at Alesia (vii, 72, § 4), the perimeter of the camp, without reckoning the space occupied by the towers themselves, would have been 119 × 80, or 9,480 feet; and allowing for that space, it could

not have been less than two miles. The camp then would have covered an area of 160 acres—one-fourth of a square mile—which is very much too large for a single legion. See, however, the note on § 6 (*contabulantur*). Caesar's narrative was of course based upon the report of Cicero; but I suspect that the exaggeration, if there is one, is due to a copyist, for to falsify the number of the towers would hardly have increased the glory of the defence (*C. G.*, pp. 250–1). *Turres,*—wooden towers, from the stories of which archers, slingers, and artillery showered missiles among the defenders of a besieged town, or, as in this case, among the assailants of a camp. When they were mounted upon an *agger*, or siege terrace (cf. ii, 30, §§ 3–4), they were moved on rollers. Occasionally they were very high, containing as many as ten stories (viii, 41, § 5).

§ 5. *ad laborem intermittitur.* See the note on 11, § 6.

§ 6. *muralium pilorum,*—heavy pikes, hurled from walls or towers. Cf. vii, 82, § 1.

contabulantur is equivalent to *tabulatis instruuntur,*—'furnished with stories'. M. Camille Jullian believes that the towers were connected by platforms (see viii, 9, § 3 and the note on vii, 22, § 3); and if so, the number (*CXX*) may be true. But this conjecture is not supported by the word *contabulantur*: in Livy, xxiv, 34, § 7 (turres) *contabulatas* can only mean 'furnished with stories', and the platforms that occasionally connected military towers were called *pontes.*

pinnae loricaeque. As a *pinna* is a pinnacle, and a *lorica* (which properly means a coat of mail or a breastplate) is here a breastwork, *pinnae . . . cratibus* may be translated by 'embattled breastworks of wattle-work'. They were fastened (*attexuntur*) to the towers, and served to screen the artillerymen who worked the catapults on the successive stories.

§ 7. *ultro.* Dictionaries explain the meaning which is at the root of this word, but otherwise give hardly enough help to the beginner. When *ultro* is equivalent to *sua sponte* its meaning is unmistakable; but here it means something different, implying that the soldiers, in their anxiety to spare Cicero fatigue, went beyond—overstepped—the line which ordinarily kept them at a respectful distance from their commander. I translate it here by 'actually'. The reader has doubtless seen for himself that in 28, § 4 it means 'into the bargain'.

41, § 1. *principes* may here be translated by 'chieftains'. See the note on 3, § 2.

§ 6. *incolumibus* is here attracted into the case of *illis.* In vi, 35, § 8 *licet* is followed by an accusative, which is less usual.

42, § 1. *vallo pedum X.* When Caesar mentions the height of a *vallum* he means the combined height of the rampart and the palisade which surmounted it. See *B. C.*, iii, 63, § 1.

pedum XV denotes the breadth of the ditch, which was

doubtless V-shaped. Caesar once (vii, 72, § 1) mentions a trench which, as only a small force was available for its defence, he constructed with vertical sides; but the labour of digging such trenches was of course very great.

§ 3. *essent.* The subjunctive shows that *ferramentorum . . . essent* is equivalent to *eiusmodi ferramentorum ut essent.*

§ 5. *ad* here, as in iv, 17, § 3, means 'in proportion to', not 'up to', for the towers would have been useless unless they had been higher than the rampart.

falces were used for loosening and dragging down the material of a rampart (vii, 84, § 1) or the stones and timbers in the walls of a besieged town (vii, 22, § 2), and were worked by men who were safe inside a sappers' hut. Vegetius (*De re mil.*, iv, 14) describes the *falx* as a wooden beam with a piece of iron at the end, wrought into the shape of a hook. A specimen was discovered about 50 years ago in the Gallic wall of Vesontio (Besançon). See *C. G.*, p. 611.

testudines were sappers' huts, used for protecting soldiers when they were filling up ditches, undermining walls, &c. They had sloping roofs, so that stones dropped on to them by the enemy might slide off harmlessly, and they were protected against fire, probably by raw hides soaked in water. Minute descriptions of these huts, derived from various writers, Greek and Roman, are to be found in dictionaries of antiquities; but I do not advise the reader to consult them; for it is not likely that the *testudines* which the Nervii made resembled those of the Greeks, though they may have been constructed on the same general principles. A *testudo*, used by Caesar's lieutenant, Trebonius, to protect his men in levelling the ground for the construction of an *agger*, is described in *B. C.*, ii, 2, § 4; and its dimensions differed widely from those of *testudines* in general, as given by Vitruvius, x, 14 (*C. G.*, pp. 609–10).

43, § 1. *fusili . . . glandes.* The ordinary meaning of *fusilis* is 'molten'; but clay cannot be melted. *Fusili ex argilla* must therefore mean 'of softened (or plastic) clay'. General A. von Göler proved by experiment that balls of clay can be sufficiently heated to set straw on fire; and innumerable bullets of baked clay have been found in ancient British forts. Why were the slings not destroyed by these red-hot bullets? I suppose that they were lined with metal (*C. G.*, pp. 729–30).

casas . . . tectae. I am inclined to infer from a parallel passage (16, § 2) in the anonymous *Bellum Hispaniense*, which describes Caesar's last campaign, that these huts had been built by Cicero's troops.

§ 4. *demigrandi causa.* Meusel (*J. B.*, 1910, p. 50) deletes these words as either a foolish marginal note or a corruption. Kraner defends them on the ground that men might have left the rampart for good reasons with the intention of returning

(cf. 51, § 5); but Meusel denies that Caesar would have expressed 'with the intention of quitting his post' in this way.

§ 5. *ut* (following *interficeretur*) includes the senses of *quandoquidem*, 'inasmuch as' and *quem ad modum*: as Meusel says (*L. C.*, iii, 2390), '*et modum et causam significat*'.

que . . . non. Doubtless Caesar wrote this instead of *neque* in order to emphasize the negation. *Non dabant* is virtually one word; therefore *que . . . non* is not incorrect.

44, § 1. *adpropinquarent.* To bring out the consecutive force of the subjunctive in English is not easy. Here is my attempt:—'In this legion there were two centurions . . . who, by dint of extraordinary courage, were getting close,' &c. Do not accept this translation unless you are satisfied that it completely and exactly expresses the Latin.

§ 5. *Ne . . . quidem* evidently does not mean 'Not even', but 'of course . . . not'. One might translate by 'Vorenus of course did not keep inside the rampart'.

§ 6. *quo . . . hunc.* The reader might have expected *quem percussum et exanimatum*; but, as Schneider says (vol. i, p. 255), Caesar chose the other way of expressing himself because he wished to emphasize the fact that the Gaul in question was struck. He often used this construction.

progrediendi, the reading of β, is preferable to *regrediendi*, as one may infer from § 8.

§ 10. *illum . . . arbitrantur.* I follow Meusel (*J. B.*, 1910, pp. 52–3) in bracketing these words. The reading of α—*illum vero obscurantur occisum*—which is nonsensical, suggests that there is something wrong. 'The fanciful reader', says Meusel, 'wanted to explain the fact, which seemed to him surprising, that the entire hostile group [*omnis multitudo*] turned upon Vorenus.' The preceding narrative shows that there was not the slightest reason to suppose that Pullo was dead.

§ 14. *versavit.* How is one to express the meaning—'moved [them] about'—in English? I should say ('Thus Fortune) made them her puppets', &c.

45, § 2. *a prima obsidione* means 'immediately after the beginning of the blockade'. Cf. *L. C.*, i, 41.

§ 3. *magnis praemiis*, says J. Lange (*N. J.*, clv, 1897, p. 613), means 'by the promise of large rewards', for of course the slave was not paid in advance. He may, indeed, have demanded a sum down before he started, for in iii, 18, § 2 and 26, § 1 *praemiis pollicitationibusque* must surely mean 'rewards and promises' (of further reward): but Lange's view is supported by 55, § 3 and i, 44, § 2, where Ariovistus says that he *non sine magna spe magnisque praemiis donum . . . reliquisse*; and I believe that he is right.

§ 4. *in iaculo* is the reading of α: β omits in. Supposing that *in* is right, it must mean 'on': for if, as Long suggests

(*D. R. R.*, iv, 227), the letter was inserted *in* the hollowed shaft of a javelin, lashing (*inligatas*) was obviously both superfluous and impossible. The letter could easily have been concealed by lashing twine over it, as if the javelin had been spliced.

46, § 2. *cum nuntio* does not mean 'along with the messenger' (that, if it were true, would be a superfluous piece of information), but 'on the arrival of the messenger'.

§ 4. *commodo* is ablative.

CCCC. This was a very small number (cf. 8, §§ 1–2). We may infer from the present passage, as well as from the passages (iv, 6, § 5; vi, 4, § 6) which show that Caesar regularly levied contingents of cavalry from the various Gallic tribes in the spring, that the Gallic cavalry, or the bulk of them, were sent home for the winter, while the Spanish cavalry and the German remained with the legions.

47, § 1. *adventu* here, as often, means not 'arrival' but 'approach'.

§ 2. *impedimenta.* The troops who had been quartered at Atuatuca, and doubtless also the legions in the other camps, had heavy baggage with them (31, § 6). In the campaign of 52 B. C. Caesar left the baggage of the whole army at Agedincum (Sens) (vii, 10, § 3); but, as any soldier would understand, the army nevertheless took some baggage with it into the field (35, § 3).

§ 4. *sciret.* The subjunctive is causal.

48, § 1. *etsi . . . redierat.* Though the meaning of these words is unmistakable, it is hard to translate them into good English. I should say 'although he had only two legions instead of the three which he had expected'.

§ 3. *equitibus Gallis.* The adjective of *Gallus* is *Gallicus*, but Caesar never uses it as an epithet of living beings. The phrase *equites Galli* is like *mare Oceanus.*

§ 4. *Graecis conscriptam litteris* can only mean 'written in Greek characters'. Dion Cassius (xl, 9, § 3) says that the letter was written in Greek: but his testimony on such a point proves nothing; and if Caesar had meant what Dion supposed, he would have said *Graece.* He uses the expression *Graecis litteris* in two other passages (i, 29, § 1 and vi, 14, § 3), where the meaning 'Greek characters' is indisputable. He wrote the letter in Latin but in Greek characters, just as officers in the Indian Mutiny sometimes wrote dispatches in Greek characters. This passage proves that some of the Nervii or their allies understood Latin (*C. G.*, pp. 730–1).

§ 5. An *ammentum* was a thong, fastened to the middle of a javelin, to enable it to be thrown with greater force. As Long explains (*D. R. R.*, iv, 228), referring to Ovid's *Metamorphoses*, xii, 321 (*inserit amento digitos*), 'when a man wished to throw a spear, he grasped the shaft . . . inserted his fingers in the loop and by means of the additional leverage was able to throw a

heavy weapon a considerable distance'. Mr. R. R. Marett (*Anthropology*, 1912, p. 231) says that the Australian 'spear-thrower' 'for no obvious reason enables him [an Australian native] to throw his spear extraordinarily far. I have myself', he adds, 'seen an Australian spear, with the help of the spear-thrower, fly a hundred and fifty yards, and strike true and deep at the end of its flight.'

§ 10. *fumi incendiorum.* Caesar was burning villages as he advanced, just as the English did in the Indian Mutiny. Cf. viii, 3, § 2.

49, § 1. *milia LX.* Probably this number was exaggerated. It is often impossible to get accurate estimates of an enemy's force. Colonel G. F. R. Henderson (*Stonewall Jackson*, i, 1898, p. 158) says that in the American Civil War 'Patterson reported to his Government that he had been opposed by 3,500 men, exactly ten times Jackson's actual number' (*C. G.*, p. 242).

§ 3. *Hunc.* I used to think, as Meusel apparently does (*L. C.*, i, 144), that the pronoun referred to *Gallum*; but I am now inclined to believe that Long (*D. R. R.*, iv, 229) is right in identifying it with *Caesarem.*

§ 6. *considit.* Just as one can sometimes best render the force of a Latin word by omitting to translate it, so it is sometimes necessary to introduce an English word the equivalent of which is left by a Latin writer to the imagination. To connect the clause that begins with *considit* with what precedes, the word 'Accordingly' is required.

§ 7. *viarum.* Passages crossed a Roman camp from front to rear and from side to side. Of the latter the principal (*via principalis*) connected the *porta principalis dextra* with the *porta principalis sinistra.* From the centre of the *via principalis* to the *porta praetoria*—the front gate of the camp—extended the *via praetoria.* Just inside the rampart a passage, in which the army was formed up when it was about to march out, ran right round the camp.

§ 8. *speculatoribus. Speculatores* (scouts) were not the same as *exploratores* (patrols), who were generally cavalry. *Speculatores* were often employed singly; and under the Empire there were ten in each legion. Similarly in our own army there are trained scouts in each company of infantry (*Tr.*, p. 58, n. 1).

50, § 5. *consulto.* Doberenz-Dinter, referring to 16, § 2, take this word with *cedere*: to me it is self-evident that it goes with *Caesar . . . iubet.*

portas. The gates (so-called) were openings in the rampart.

51, § 4. *videbantur* is equivalent to *sibi videbantur.*

52, § 1. *etiam* is to be taken, in the sense of *vel*, with *parvulo.*

§ 6. *hoc* is ablative.

53, § 1. *per Remos.* Doberenz-Dinter take these words in the sense of *per Remorum fines.* I believe that they are equivalent to *a Remis* or *Remorum opera*; and I find that Schneider, who refers to iv, 21, § 5, and Meusel (*L. C.*, ii, 1044) take them in the same way. The instances in which *per* is used in the sense

of *auxilio* or *opera* fill nearly three columns of Meusel's Lexicon. If Caesar had meant 'through the country of the Remi', he would almost certainly have written *per Remorum fines* (see *L. C.*, ii, 1040–1, i, 1270). He only twice (i, 6, § 1; 9, § 1) uses *per* with the name of a tribe in the sense of 'through the country of', and there his meaning is unmistakable.

fieret. Meusel (*L. C.*, iii, 1505) regards the force of the subjunctive as final. I should say that it is consecutive,—'a shout arose . . . announcing a victory and conveying the congratulations of the Remi.'

§ 3. *trinis.* It ought to be unnecessary to explain why *trinis* is used, and not *tribus.*

totam hiemem . . . decrevit. See the second note on 1, § 1.

§ 4. *reliqui* cannot be genitive, as any one will see if he reads the sentence carefully. It means 'the other tribes' from the point of view of each tribe which sent embassies.

§ 6. *Aremoricae* is a Celtic word meaning 'maritime'.

54, § 1. *cum se scire . . . denuntiaret* is an old conjecture, which appeared first in the Aldine edition. The reading of *a* is *cum se scire quae fierent alias cohortando denuntiaret,* the order of which is obviously wrong; of *β*, *cum sciret deficere, alias cohortando,* which is nonsense. Meusel (*J. B.*, 1910, p. 38) brackets the words in question as a marginal explanation of *territando.*

§ 4. *fuerit.* See the note on 15, § 1 (*fuerint*).

§ 5. *compluribus . . . causis.* Cf. 41, § 5 and *C. G.*, pp. 103–5.

eius, I am sure, agrees with *opinionis,* and Meusel (*L. C.*, ii, 257) agrees with me.

55, § 2. *Ariovisti . . . Tencterorum.* See pp. 4, 7.

56, § 2. *qui ex iis . . . necatur.* Probably the last comer was regarded as accursed. That his execution involved a religious ceremony I have little doubt; and I am sure that those who have studied Celtic religion will agree with me. Cf. vi, 16.

venit is of course perfect: tenses in Latin, as the learner doubtless knows, correspond with facts, for good Latin writers said exactly what they meant; whereas in English tenses are often used loosely.

§ 3. *quem supra demonstravimus . . . discessisse.* Cf. 3, §§ 2–5; 4, § 3.

57, § 2. *equites . . . evocat.* As it was winter, Labienus had only a few cavalry with him. See the second note on 46, § 4.

58, § 1. *intromissis equitibus.* Evidently the Treveran sentries were excessively careless.

§ 4. *praecipit atque interdicit.* The former verb of course refers to *unum . . . Indutiomarum,* the latter to *neu quis . . . viderit*; but, as in 22, § 5, it is impossible to use two verbs in translation: 'giving stringent orders' will bring out the sense.

§ 6. *hominis.* See the note on 7, § 9. I doubt whether our language can adequately express the compliment which the word implies (though Schneider may be right in thinking that it is used with a touch of irony). If Caesar had written in English, he might perhaps have said, 'the general's' (good fortune), suggesting that Labienus was a good general.

VOCABULARY

ā, ăb, abs, prep. c. abl., (1) *from, from near*; (2) *on the side of*, a Suebis, ab decumana porta, ab septentrionibus; ab superiore parte—*higher up*, a dextro cornu—*on the right wing*, a latere—*on the flank*, a tergo—*in the rear*, a fronte—*in front*, ab infimo—*at the bottom*, a medio colle—*halfway up the hill*, ab novissimis—*in the rear ranks*, ab labris—*round the rim*; (3) *at a distance of*, a millibus passuum duobus, ab tanto spatio; (4) *as regards*, laborare ab re frumentaria; (5) *immediately after*, ab cohortatione, a prima obsidione; (6) *by*.

ab-do, dĭdi, dĭtum (3), tr. *hide, withdraw*; abditus—*remote, secluded*.

ăb-eo, ii, ĭtum, īre, intr. *go away, retire*.

abĭcio, iēci, iectum (3), tr. *throw away, throw, lay down* (*arms*).

ăbiēs, ĕtis, f. *fir*.

ab-iungo, xi, ctum (3), tr. *detach*.

abs, see **a.**

abscīdo, cīdi, cīsum (3), tr. *cut, cut down, cut off*.

absens, *absent*.

absĭmĭlis, e, *unlike*.

ab-sisto, stĭti (3), intr. *keep aloof*; a. a legionibus—*hesitate to attack the legions*.

abstĭneo, tĭnui, tentum (2), intr. *abstain*; a. proelio—*decline the combat*, a. a mulieribus—*spare the women*.

abs-trăho, xi, ctum (3), tr. *take away*.

ab-sum, abfui (āfui), ăbesse, intr. *am absent, distant*; a. ab consilio—*stand out of a scheme*, neque abest suspicio—*and there is some reason to suspect*, non multum abest ab eo quin possint—*they nearly can*, non longius abest quin educat—*he will soon lead out*; longe eis afuturum—*it would little avail them*.

ăb-undo (1), intr. c. abl. *have in abundance*; a. equitatu—*am strong in cavalry*.

āc, see **atque.**

ac-cēdo, cessi, cessum (3), intr. *approach, move up, advance, am added*; huc accedit—*there is this further point*.

ac-cĕlĕro (1), intr. *hasten*.

accĭdo, cĭdi (3), intr. *fall, happen, befall, turn out*.

accīdo, cīdi, cīsum (3), tr. *cut into*.

accĭpio, cēpi, ceptum (3), tr. *receive, accept, hear, hear of*; acceptus, c. dat.—*popular with*.

acclīvis, e, *sloping upward*.

acclīvĭtās, ātis, f. *upward slope, gradient*.

ac-commŏdo (1), tr. *fit on*; accommodatus—*suitable, adapted*.

accūrātius, comp. adv. of accūrātē, *elaborately*.

ac-curro, cŭcurri and curri,

cursum (3), intr. *run up, ride up.*
accūso (1), tr. *censure, accuse, blame.*
ăcerbĭtās, ātis, f. *hardship.*
ăcerbius, comp. adv. of ăcerbē, *unwillingly, with distress.*
ăcerbus, a, um, *cruel.*
ācerrĭmē, see **acriter.**
ăcervus, i, m. *heap.*
ăciēs, ēi, f. *battle array, line, band*; a. oculorum—*piercing glance of eyes.*
ācrĭter, adv. *fiercely, vigorously*; comp. ācrius, superl. ācerrĭmē.
actuārius, a, um, *swift, capable of rowing and sailing.*
ăcūtus, a, um, *sharp.*
ăd, prep. c. acc. *to, towards, against, at, near, for, for the purpose of*; *as regards*, e.g. nihil ad celeritatem sibi reliqui fecerunt, magni interest ad opinionem; *according to*, e.g. ad praescriptum, ad arbitrium, ad altitudinem; of time, e.g. ad solis occasum—*towards sunset*, ad tempus, diem—*punctually*, ad extremum—*at last*; *to the number of*, e.g. ad millia decem, (adverbially) occisis ad hominum millibus quattuor, ad unum omnes—*all to a man.*
a. d. = ante diem.
ădactus, see **adigo.**
ăd-aequo (1), tr. and intr. *make equal, bring level, come level*; a. gratiā—*stand as high in favour*; a. cursum, c. gen.—*keep pace with*; a. altitudinem *reach up to.*
ăd-ămo (1), tr. *conceive a passion for.*
ad-do, dĭdi, dĭtum (3), tr. and intr. *add*; a. de—*also mention.*
ad-dūco, xi, ctum (3), tr. *bring, lead against, induce, impel, pull taut* iii. 14. 6.
ădemptus, see **adimo.**
ăd-eo, ii, ĭtum, īre, tr. *go to, come to, approach, visit, encounter.*
ădeo, adv. *so, to such a degree, in fact.*
ădeptus, see **adipiscor.**
ăd-ĕquĭto (1), intr. *ride up.*
ad-fĕro, attŭli, lātum, ferre, tr. *bring, cause, allege.*
adficio, fēci, fectum (3), tr. *affect*; a. beneficio—*treat kindly*; a. laetitiā—*inspire with joy*; passive c. abl. *suffer*, e.g. adficior dolore, cruciatibus, morbo.
ad-fīgo, xi, xum (3), tr. *fix to.*
ad-fingo, finxi, fictum (3), tr. *invent, add falsely.*
adfīnĭtās, ātis, f. *family connexion, intermarriage.*
adfirmātio, ōnis, f. *assurance.*
adflicto (1), tr. *injure, damage, wreck.*
ad-flīgo, xi, ctum (3), tr. *damage, knock down, throw down.*
adgrĕdior, gressus sum, grĕdi, tr. *attack.*
ad-grĕgo (1), reflex. (c. dat. or ad), *gather round, flock to, join.*
ăd-haeresco, haesi, haesum (3), intr. *cling*; a. ad—*lodge in* (of a spear).
ădhĭbeo, ui, ĭtum (2), tr. *summon, call in*; a. diligentiam—*take care.*
ăd-hortor (1), tr. *cheer on, urge on.*
ădhuc, adv. *as yet, so far.*
ad-iăceo, ui (2), intr. c. dat. *border on.*
adĭcio, iēci, iectum (3), tr. *throw up against, add*; pass. *adjoin.*
ădĭgo, ēgi, actum (3), tr. *push*

up, drive in, drive home (a weapon); a. aliquem ius iurandum—*swear a person, make him take an oath.*
ădĭmo, ēmi, emptum (3), tr. *take away, cut off* (view).
ădĭpiscor, eptus sum (3), tr. *gain, win.*
ădĭtus, ūs, m. *approach, access, entrance, right of approach, means of access*; sermonis aditus—*right to address.*
ad-iūdĭco (1), tr. *confer, award.*
ad-iungo, nxi, nctum (3), tr. *annex, unite, win over, gain the adhesion of.*
adiūtor, ōris, m. *helper.*
ad-iŭvo, iūvi, iūtum (1), tr. *help, aid.*
adlĭcio, lexi, lectum (3), tr. *entice, tempt, induce.*
admĭnister, tri, m. *servant, agent.*
ad-mĭnistro (1), tr. *arrange, manage, carry out*; a. imperia—*give orders* ii. 22. 1.
ad-mīror (1), tr. and intr. *feel surprised, admire, wonder at.*
ad-mitto, mīsi, missum (3), tr. *let go, commit* (a crime), *incur* (disgrace); equo admisso—*at full gallop.*
admŏdum, adv. *very, greatly*; (with a number) *quite, as many as* v. 40. 2.
ad-mŏneo, ui, ĭtum (2), tr. *warn.*
ădŏlesco, ēvi, ultum (3), intr. *grow up.*
ăd-ŏrior, ortus sum (4), tr. *attack.*
ad-pello, pŭli, pulsum (3), tr. *bring to land*; a. navem—*put in a ship.*
ad-pĕto, īvi and ii, ītum (3), tr. and intr. *solicit, seek, aim at*; *approach, draw near.*
ad-plĭco, āvi, ātum, and cŭi, cĭtum, āre, reflex. c. ad, *lean against.*
ad-porto (1), tr. *bring.*
ad-prŏbo (1), tr. *approve.*
ad-prŏpinquo (1), intr. *approach, draw near, get close.*
adquīro, sīvi, sītum (3), tr. *get*; a. aliquid—*gain some positive advantage.*
ad-scisco, īvi, ītum (3), tr. *admit, attach*; a. aliquem mihi—*form an alliance with.*
adsĭduus, a, um, *unbroken, continued.*
ad-sisto, stĭti (3), intr. *stand by*; a. in publico—*appear in public.*
adsuēfăcio, fēci, factum (3), tr. *accustom*; a. equos remanere—*train horses to stand*; a. disciplinā—*subject to discipline.*
ad-suesco, suēvi, suētum (3), intr. *grow accustomed*; a. ad homines—*become domesticated.*
ad-sum, fui, esse, intr. *am at hand, stand by.*
ădŭlescens, tis, *young, a young man, the younger.*
ădŭlescentia, ae, f. *youth.*
ădŭlescentŭlus, i, m. *a very young man.*
adventus, ūs, m. *arrival, approach.*
adversārius, i, m. *enemy.*
adversus, a, um (pf. partic. of adverto), *facing, opposite, adverse*; adverso colle, flumine—*up the hill, up stream*; adversa nocte—*in the face of night* iv. 28. 3; in adversum os—*full in the face*; adversae res—*a reverse*; a. proelium—*defeat.*
adversus, prep. c. acc. *against.*
ad-verto, ti, sum (3), tr. *turn towards*; a. animum—*notice.*
ad-vŏco (1), tr. *summon.*
ad-vŏlo (1), intr. *swoop down.*

aedificium, i, n. *building*; pl. esp. *granaries* or *homesteads*.
aedifico (1), tr. *build*.
aeger, gra, grum, *sick*, *invalid*.
aegrē, adv. *with difficulty*; superl. aegerrimē.
aequāliter, adv. *evenly*.
aequinoctium, i, n. *equinox*.
aequitās, ātis, f. *fairness*; a. animi—*contentment*.
aequo (1), tr. *equalize*, *make equal*.
aequus, a, um, *equal*, *level*, *fair*, *right*, *just*, *advantageous*; aequo animo—*calmly*, *without excitement*; aequo Marte dimico—*fight with even chances*.
aerāria, ae, f. *mine*.
aes, aeris, n. *bronze*; a. alienum—*debt*.
aestās, ātis, f. *summer*.
aestimātio, ōnis, f. *valuation*.
aestimo (1), tr. *weigh*, *judge*, *regard*.
aestīvus, a, um, *of summer*.
aestuārium, i, n. *estuary*, *tidal creek*.
aestus, ūs, m. *heat*, *tide*.
aetās, ātis, f. *age*.
aeternus, a, um, *everlasting*.
Africus, i, m. south-west wind.
āfui, see **absum**.
ăger, gri, m. *land*, *district*, *territory*, *country*.
agger, ĕris, m. *rampart*, *dike*, *terrace*, *embankment*; *material*, *earth*, *lumber*, *rubble*; aggerem iacio—*shoot earth*.
ăgito (1), tr. *debate*.
agmĕn, ĭnis, n. *march*, *army on the march*, *column*, *main body* vii. 13. 2; a. primum—*the van*; a. novissimum—*the rear*.
ăgo, ēgi, actum (3), tr. *do*, *act*, *drive*, *bring up*; a. de—*discuss*; a. cum—*address*; a. cum tribunis—*depute the tribunes*; a. gratias—*convey thanks*; a. conventus—*hold assizes*.
ălăcer, cris, cre, *impetuous*, *eager*.
ălacritās, -ātis, f. *ardour*, *enthusiasm*, *dash*.
ālārii, ōrum, m. *auxiliaries*.
albus, a, um, *white*; a. plumbum—*tin*.
alcēs, is, f. *elk*.
ăliās, adv. *at other times*; alias . . . alias—*at one time . . . at another*.
ăliēno (1), tr. *estrange*, *alienate*; alienatā mente—*beside oneself*.
ăliēnus, a, um, *foreign*, *of another*, *irrelevant*, *unfavourable*; alienissimi—*utter strangers*.
ălio, adv. *to another place*, *elsewhere*.
ăliquamdiu, adv. *for a considerable time*.
ăliquando, adv. *at some time or other*, *sooner or later*, *at last*.
ăliquanto, adv. *considerably*.
ăliquantus, a, um, *considerable*; subst. aliquantum, i, n. *a considerable part*.
ăliqui, qua, quod, indef. adj. *some*; aliqui—pl. subst. v. 26. 4.
ăliquis, quid, indef. pron. *some one*, *something*; aliquid, adv. *somewhat* i. 40. 5.
ăliquot, indecl. num. *several*.
ăliter, adv. *otherwise*; a. ac—*otherwise than*.
ălius, a, ud, *other*, *different*; alii . . . alii—*some . . . others*; a. ac—*other than*, *different from*; alius ex alia domo—*different men from different houses*, *one from one house one from another*.
ălo, ălui, altum (3), tr. *maintain*, *increase*, *feed*, *foster*, *cherish*.
alter, altĕra, altĕrum, *one of two*, *the other*, *second*; altero die—

next day; plur. alteri . . . alteri —*one party . . . the other.*
alternus, a, um, *alternate.*
altĭtūdo, ĭnis, f. *height, depth, thickness.*
altus, a, um, *high, deep*; altum, i, n. *open sea, deep water.*
ălūta, ae, f. *leather.*
ambactus, i, m. *armed servant.*
ambo, ae, o, *both.*
āmentia, ae, f. *madness.*
ămīcĭtia, ae, f. *friendship, amity*; amicitiae causā—*in the hope of winning friendship.*
ămīcus, a, um, *friendly, well-disposed, reliable*; amicus, i, m. *friend.*
ā-mitto, mīsi, missum (3), tr. *lose, let slip.*
ammentum, i, n. *thong.*
ămor, ōris, m. *affection.*
amplĭfĭco (1), tr. *increase.*
amplissĭmē, superl. adv. (amplē), *very handsomely, generously.*
amplĭtūdo, ĭnis, f. *size, power.*
amplius, compar. adv. (amplē), absol. or with abl. *more, more than, farther.*
amplus, a, um, *considerable, illustrious, grand*; amplius obsidum—*more hostages.*
ăn, conj. *or* (after utrum or -ne); also used elliptically to ask a single question.
anceps, ancĭpĭtis, *double, on two fronts* (of a battle).
ancŏra, ae, f. *anchor.*
anfractus, ūs, m. *bend* (of a road).
angŭlus, i, m. *corner.*
angustē, adv. *closely, scantily* v. 24. 1.
angustiae, ārum, f. *defile, narrowness, straits* (fig.); angustiis viarum—*by making the passages narrow.*
angustus, a, um, *narrow, contracted, abrupt* (of a hill iv. 23. 3); res in angusto est—*the situation is critical.*
ănĭma, ae, f. *soul.*
ănĭmadverto, ti, sum (3), tr. *notice, observe*; a. in aliquem —*punish a person.*
ănĭmăl, ālis, n. *beast, animal.*
ănĭmus, i, m. *mind, intention, temper, feelings, nerve, courage*; a. relinquit me—*I faint*; a. avertitur ab—*turn against*; animum adverto — *notice*; bono animo — *well-disposed*; magno animo — *resolutely*; magni animi — *of masterful character*; in animo est—*intend*; animi causā—*for pastime.*
annōtĭnus, a, um, *last year's.*
annus, i, m. *year*; anni tempus —*season.*
annuus, a, um, *for a year, annual.*
anser, ĕris, m. *goose.*
antĕ, adv. *before, formerly*; paucis ante diebus—*a few days before*; ante . . . quam, conj. *before*; prep. c. acc. *before, up to*; a. d. v Kal. Apr. = ante diem quintum Kalendas Apriles, *on the fifth day before the Kalends of April.*
anteā, adv. *before, previously.*
antĕ-cēdo, cessi, cessum (3), tr. and intr. *precede, march ahead, go in front of, excel, surpass, outstrip, am beforehand.*
antĕcursor, ōris, m. *advanced guard.*
antĕ-fĕro, tŭli, lātum, ferre, tr. *prefer.*
antemna, ae, f. *yard.*
antĕ-pōno, pŏsui, pŏsĭtum (3), tr. *prefer.*
antĕ-verto, ti, sum (3), tr. *prefer, deem of more importance.*

antīquĭtus, adv. *in times past, at a remote period.*
antīquus, a, um, *ancient, former*; antiquissimum quodque tempus—*the details of ancient history.*
Ap. = *Appius.*
ăpertē, adv. *manifestly, openly.*
ăpertus, a, um, *open, exposed, bare.*
appăro (1), tr. *prepare, make ready.*
appello (1), tr. *call, call upon, address.*
Apr. = Aprīlis, *April.*
aptus, a, um, *fit.*
ăpŭd, prep. c. acc. *at, in the neighbourhood of, among, with.*
ăqua, ae, f. *water, water-clock.*
ăquātio, ōnis, f. *getting water.*
ăquĭla, ae, f. *eagle* (as standard).
ăquĭlĭfer, ĕri, m. *standard-bearer.*
arbĭter, tri, m. *umpire.*
arbitrium, i, n. *judgement, arbitrament, will*; arbitrio suo—*just as he (they) pleased.*
arbitror (1), intr. *consider, believe.*
arbor, ŏris, f. *tree.*
arcesso, sīvi, sītum (3), *summon.*
ardeo, si, sum (2), intr. *burn, am ablaze* (fig.).
arduus, a, um, *steep, difficult.*
argentum, i, n. *silver.*
argilla, ae, f. *clay.*
ārĭdus, a, um, *dry*; aridum, i, n. *dry land.*
ărĭēs, ĕtis, m. *battering-ram, buttress.*
arma, ōrum, n. *arms, weapons, tackle, equipment.*
armāmenta, ōrum, n. *rigging.*
armātūra, ae, f. *armament*; levis a.—*light-armed troops.*
armo (1), tr. *arm, fit out.*
arrĭpio, ripui, reptum (3), tr. *seize.*
arrŏganter, adv. *presumptuously.*
arrŏgantia, ae, f. *arrogance, presumption.*
ars, tis, f. *art.*
artē, adv. *firmly, closely*; compar. artius.
artĭcŭlus, i, m. *joint.*
artĭfĭcium, i, n. *trickery, handicraft.*
artus, a, um, *dense, close.*
arx, cis, f. *citadel.*
ascendo, di, sum (3), tr. *ascend, climb.*
ascensus, ūs, m. *ascent, way up.*
aspectus, ūs, m. *sight, appearance.*
asper, ĕra, ĕrum, *violent.*
ăt, conj. *but, at all events.*
atque, āc, conj. *and, and so, and yet* vii. 77. 6; see also under **aliter, alius, contra, idem, par, simul, similis.**
at-texo, xui, xtum (3), tr. *weave on, fasten.*
attingo, tĭgi, tactum, tr. *touch, extend to, reach.*
at-trĭbuo, ui, ūtum (3), *assign.*
auctior, ōris, compar. of auctus, a, um, *a gainer* i. 43. 8.
auctor, ōris, m. *adviser, guide, abettor*; a. sum—*I sanction.*
auctōrĭtās, ātis, f. *influence, authority, prestige.*
audācia, ae, f. *audacity.*
audacter (compar. audācius, superl. audācissĭmē), adv. *boldly, confidently.*
audeo, ausus sum (2), tr. and intr. *dare, venture.*
audio (4), tr. *hear, hear of*; dicto audiens—*obedient*; non dicto audiens sum—*mutiny.*
audĭtio, ōnis, f. *report.*
augeo, xi, ctum (2), tr. *increase, strengthen.*

aureus, a, um, *golden.*
auriga, ae, m. *driver, charioteer.*
auris, is, f. *ear.*
ausus, see **audeo.**
aut, conj. *or*; aut . . . aut—*either . . . or.*
autem, conj. *but, now, whereas.*
autumnus, i, m. *autumn.*
auxĭliāris, e, *auxiliary.*
auxilior (1), intr. *bring help.*
auxĭlium, i, n. *help*; plur. *auxiliaries, reinforcements*; auxilii causā—*as auxiliaries*, a. extremum—*last resource.*
ăvārĭtia, ae, f. *avarice.*
ā-vĕho, xi, ctum (3), tr. *carry away.*
ā-versus, a, um, pf. partic. of averto, *in flight, in the rear.*
ā-verto, ti, sum (3), tr. *turn away, turn aside, repel, estrange*; a. iter ab—*strike off from.*
ăvis, is, f. *bird.*
ăvus, i, m. *grandfather.*

balteus, i, m. *sword-belt.*
barbărus, a, um, *uncivilized, savage, foreign*; barbari atque imperiti—*simple natives, ignorant barbarians.*
bellĭcōsus, a, um, *warlike.*
bellĭcus, a, um, *warlike, in war.*
bello (1), intr. *fight*; bellandi cupidus—*warlike.*
bellum, i, n. *war, campaign.*
bĕnĕ (compar. mĕlius, superl. optĭmē), adv. *well.*
bĕnĕficium, i, n. *kindness, favour, benefit, services*; beneficio sortium—*thanks to the lots*; beneficio deorum—*by the blessing of heaven.*
bĕnĕvŏlentia, ae, f. *goodwill, devotion.*
bīdŭum, i, n. *two days.*
biennium, i, n. *two years.*
bīni, ae, a, *two each, two, couples.*
bĭpĕdālis, e, *two feet wide.*
bipertīto, adv. *in two divisions.*
bis, adv. *twice.*
bŏnitās, ātis, f. *goodness*; b. agrorum—*fertility of the land.*
bŏnus, a, um (compar. mĕlior, superl. optĭmus), *good*; bŏna, ōrum, n. *property.*
bōs, bŏvis, c. *ox, cow.*
bracchium, i, n. *arm.*
brĕvis, e, *short*; brevi, *in a short space.*
brĕvitās, ātis, f. *shortness, low stature.*
brĕviter, adv. *briefly.*
brūma, ae, f. *the shortest day*; sub brumam—*about the winter solstice.*

C. = centum, or *Gaius.*
căcūmen, ĭnis, n. *end, point.*
cădāver, ĕris, n. *corpse.*
cădo, cĕcĭdi, cāsum (3), intr. *fall, am killed.*
caedēs, is, f. *slaughter, massacre, murder.*
caedo, cĕcīdi, caesum (3), tr. *cut down.*
caelestis, e, *celestial*; plur. *the gods.*
caerĭmōnia, ae, f. *rite.*
caerŭlĕus, a, um, *blueish.*
caespĕs, ĭtis, m. *sod.*
călămĭtās, ātis, f. *disaster, injury.*
callĭdus, a, um, *quick-witted.*
cālo, ōnis, m. *an army servant.*
campester, tris, tre, *level, in the plain.*
campus, i, m. *plain.*
căno, cĕcĭni, cantum (3), *blow bugle*; receptui cano—*sound the recall.*
căpillus, i, m. *hair.*
căpio, cēpi, captum (3), *take, capture, entrap, enslave*; c. consilium—*form a resolution.*

mature a plan; c. aliud initium belli—*form a fresh plan of campaign*; c. loca—*select positions*; c. plus doloris—*suffer more*; c. locum—*reach one's destination*; c. insulam—*make the island*; c. montem—*gain the hill*; c. fugam—*take to flight*; c. initium ab—*begin at*; captus, a, um, *fascinated*.

capra, ae, f. *goat*.

captīvus, i, m. *prisoner*.

captus, ūs, m. *notion*; ut est c. Germanorum — *according to German standards*.

căpŭt, ĭtis, n. *head, person, mouth* (of a river); capitis periculo—*at risk of one's life*; capitis poena—*death penalty*.

căreo, ui (2), c. abl. *am without, lack*.

cărīna, ae, f. *keel, ship's bottom*.

căro, carnis, f. *flesh*.

carpo, psi, ptum (3), *revile*.

carrus, i, m. *wagon, cart*.

cārus, a, um, *dear, cherished*.

căsa, ae, f. *hut*.

cāsĕus, i, m. *cheese*.

Cassiānum bellum, *the campaign against Cassius*.

cassis, ĭdis, f. *helmet*.

castellum, i, n. *redoubt, fortified post, fort*.

castra, ōrum, n. *camp*; c. habere—*keep the field*; quintis castris—*in five marches*.

cāsus, ūs, m. *chance, hazard, accident, occurrence, contingency, calamity, fate*.

cătēnă, ae, f. *chain*; plur. *prison*.

causa, ae, f. *cause, reason, pretext*; causā c. gen.—*for the sake of*; in eadem causa—*in the same position*, cf. vi. 32. 1; causā cognitā — *having inquired into the case*; causam dico—*plead one's cause*; per causam—*on a pretext*.

cautē, adv. *warily*.

căveo, cāvi, cautum (2), intr. *take precautions*; c. obsidibus de pecunia—*give hostages as security for money*; obsidibus cavere inter se—*give mutual security by exchanging hostages*.

cēdo, cessi, cessum (3), intr. *retire, retreat, give way, yield*.

cĕler, ĕris, ĕre, *swift*.

cĕlĕrĭtās, ātis, f. *speed, swiftness*.

cĕlĕrĭter (compar. cĕlĕrius, superl. cĕlerrĭmē), adv. *promptly, quickly, speedily*.

cēlo (1), tr. *hide, conceal*; pass. *escape notice*.

censeo, sui, sum (2), intr. *vote, decide, pass a resolution*.

census, ūs, m. *census*.

centum, indecl. num. *hundred*.

centŭrĭo, ōnis, m. *centurion*.

cerno, crēvi, crētum (3), tr. *see, discern*.

certāmen, ĭnis, n. *combat, struggle*.

certē, adv. *certainly, at all events*; certius cognosco—*get correct information*.

certus, a, um, *sure, accurate, fixed, particular*; certa subsidia—*reserves at fixed points*; certa manus—*an organized body*; certiorem facio—*I inform*; certissimae res—*positive facts*.

cervus, i, m. *stag*; plur. *structure of forked branches*.

cētĕri, ae, a, *the rest, all other*.

cĭbāria, ōrum, n. *provisions, food*.

cĭbus, i, m. *food*.

cingo, nxi, nctum (3), tr. *encircle, surround*; c. murum—*man the wall*.

cippus, i, m. *grave-post.*
circīnus, i, m. *compass.*
circĭter, prep. c. acc. *about.*
circuĭtus, ūs, m. *circuit, turn, détour.*
circum, prep. c. acc. *near, in the neighbourhood of.*
circumcīdo, cīdi, cīsum (3), tr. *cut, cut out*; circumcisus, a, um, *steep, precipitous.*
circumclūdo, si, sum (3), tr. *enclose*; c. argento—*mount in silver.*
circum-do, dĕdi, dătum, dăre, tr. *surround, place round.*
circum-dūco, xi, ctum (3), tr. *draw round.*
circum-eo, ii, ĭtum, īre, tr. *ride round, inspect.*
circum-fundo, fūdi, fūsum (3), tr. *surround, set round about*; pass. *swarm round, spread round.*
circumĭcio, iēci, iectum (3), tr. *throw round.*
circum-mitto, mīsi, missum (3), tr. *send round.*
circum-mūnio (4), tr. *wall round, shut in.*
circum-plector, plexus sum (3), tr. *embrace, surround.*
circum-sisto, stĕti (3), tr. *surround, throng round, rally round.*
circumspĭcio, spexi, spectum (3), tr. *examine, look round at*; c. animo—*endeavour to fathom.*
circum-vallo (1), tr. *draw lines round, shut in.*
circum-vĕhor, vectus sum (3), intr. *ride round, sail round.*
circum-vĕnio, vēni, ventum (4), tr. *surround, overreach.*
cis, prep. c. acc. *on this side of.*
Cis-alpīnus, a, um, *on this side of the Alps, Cisalpine.*
Cis-rhēnānus, a, um, *on this side of the Rhine, Cisrhenane.*
cĭtātus, a, um, pf. partic. of cito, *swift, rapid.*
cĭtĕrior, ius, compar. adj. *on this side, hither*; c. provincia—*the Cisalpine province.*
cĭtissĭmē, adv. superl. of cito, *very nimbly.*
cĭtrā, prep. c. acc. *on this side of, on the near side of.*
cĭtro, adv. *to this side*; ultro citroque—*to and fro.*
cīvis, is, m. *citizen, Roman.*
cīvĭtās, ātis, f. *community, tribe, citizenship*; civitate dono—*enfranchise.*
clam, adv. *by stealth, secretly.*
clāmĭto (1), intr. *insist loudly.*
clāmor, ōris, m. *cry, cries, uproar.*
clandestīnus, a, um, *secret.*
clārus, a, um, *loud.*
classis, is, f. *fleet.*
claudo, si, sum (3), tr. *close, shut*; c. agmen—*bring up the rear.*
clāvus, i, m. *bolt.*
clēmentia, ae, f. *forbearance.*
cliens, ntis, m. *retainer, dependant.*
clientēla, ae, f. *dependants, dependency.*
clīvus, i, m. *slope.*
Cn. = *Gnaeus.*
cŏ-ăcervo (1), tr. *heap up.*
cŏactus, a, um, see cogo.
cŏactus, ūs, m. *compulsion.*
cŏagmento (1), tr. *fasten together.*
cŏ-ărto (1), tr. *compress*; pass. *jam.*
cŏ-ĕmo, ēmi, emptum (1), tr. *buy up, purchase.*
cŏ-eo, ii, ĭtum, īre, intr. *assemble.*
coepi, coeptus sum (with pas-

sive verbs), coepisse, intr. *began.*

cŏerceo, ui, ĭtum (2), tr. *control, coerce.*

cōgito (1), tr. *ponder, reflect upon, consider, conclude*; c. inf. *have in mind, intend, plan*; res cogitanda et suscipienda est—*the problem must be faced and solved.*

cognātio, ōnis, f. *group of kinsmen*; magnae cognationis—*having powerful family connexions.*

co-gnosco, gnōvi, gnĭtum (3), tr. *come to know, learn, recognize, inform oneself of*; perf. *know*; virtute cognitus sum—*I am of approved valour.*

cōgo, cŏēgi, cŏactum (3), tr. *collect, concentrate, summon, compel*; c. ad—*compel to come to*; coactus, a, um, *under pressure.*

cŏhors, rtis, f. *cohort.*

cŏhortātio, ōnis, f. *haranguing.*

cŏhortor (1), tr. *harangue, urge, encourage.*

coĭcio, coniēci, coniectum (3), tr. *throw, hurl, transfer hastily*; reflex. *rush*; c. in fugam—*send flying, put to flight.*

collĭgo, lēgi, lectum (3), tr. *collect*; reflex. *recover, fall into line, close the ranks*; c. auctoritatem—*acquire influence.*

collis, is, m. *hill.*

cŏlo, ui, cultum (3), tr. *farm, reverence.*

cŏlor, ōris, m. *colour, tint.*

comb-ūro, ussi, ustum (3), tr. *burn.*

cŏmĕs, ĭtis, m. *companion.*

cŏmĭtia, ōrum, n. *election.*

cŏmĭtor (1), tr. *accompany.*

commeātus, ūs, m. *supplies, stores, transportation*; duobus commeatibus—*in two trips.*

com-mĕmŏro (1), tr. *recount, mention*; c. eadem—*tell the same tale.*

commendo (1), tr. *recommend, entrust.*

com-meo (1), intr. *come and go*; c. ad—*visit often.*

commĭnus, adv. *hand to hand.*

commissūra, ae, f. *joint, joining-place.*

com-mitto, mīsi, missum (3), tr. *bind together, trust*; nihil committere c. dat.—*not to depend on*; c. ut—*allow*; nihil commissum est a me—*I have done nothing*; c. proelium—*begin an action*; c. proelium cum—*engage.*

commŏdē, adv. *well, adequately, conveniently*; satis c.—*properly*; minus c.—*less easily.*

commŏdum, i, n. *advantage, convenience, success*; plur. *good things*; commodo rei publicae—*consistently with the public interests.*

commŏdus, a, um, *convenient, good*; commodissimum, *the best plan, course.*

commŏnĕfăcio, fēci, factum (3), tr. *remind.*

com-mŏror (1), intr. *delay, stay.*

com-mŏveo, mōvi, mōtum (2), tr. *influence, alarm, trouble*; reflex. *stir.*

commūnĭco (1), tr. *share, communicate, concert*; c. cum—*consult, add to* vi. 19. 1.

com-mūnio (4), *fortify strongly.*

commūnis, e, *common, joint, national*; c. res—*matters which concern both, all*; communi consilio—*officially, by a common policy*; c. lex—*inter-tribal law*; c. odium—*indiscriminate*

animosity; c. magistratus—*central magistracy.*

commūtātio, ōnis, f. *change*; c. rerum—*change, reverse of fortune*; c. aestus—*turn of the tide.*

com-mūto (1), tr. *alter, exchange.*

compăro (1), tr. *compare.*

com-păro (1), tr. *prepare, make ready, amass, assemble, procure, gain.*

com-pello, pŭli, pulsum (3), tr. *drive, remove, drive in.*

compendium, i, n. *profits.*

compĕrio, pĕri, pertum (4), tr. *ascertain, detect.*

complector, plexus sum (3), tr. *embrace, cover* (ground).

com-pleo, plēvi, plētum (2), tr. *fill, fill up, complete*; c. murum—*line the wall*; pass. *swarm.*

complūres, complūra, *many, several.*

com-porto (1), tr. *bring, collect.*

com-prĕhendo, di, sum (3), tr. *seize, arrest, take by the hand*; c. ignem—*catch fire.*

comprŏbo (1), tr. *justify.*

cōnātum, i, n. *attempt.*

cōnātus, ūs, m. *attempt.*

con-cēdo, cessi, cessum (3), tr. and intr. *allow, grant, cede, give in, give way*; non conceditur—*it is forbidden.*

concessus, ūs, m. *permission.*

concĭdo, cĭdi (3), intr. *fall down, drop.*

concīdo, cīdi, cīsum (3), tr. *cut, interrupt, destroy, kill.*

concĭlio (1), tr. *procure, win over.*

concilium, i, n. *assembly, council.*

concĭto (1), tr. *rouse, stir up.*

con-clāmo (1), intr. *roar out, raise a cry*; c. victoriam—*shout 'Victory!'.*

conclūsus, a, um, pf. partic. of concludo, *shut in*; c. mare—*a land-locked sea.*

con-crĕpo, ui, ĭtum, āre, intr. *clash.*

con-curro, cucurri and curri, cursum (3), intr. *run together, rush*; c. ad—*resort to*; c. ad arma—*fly to arms.*

con-curso (1), intr. *run from place to place.*

con-cursus, ūs, m. *thronging, hurried movement, rapid concentration, collision.*

condemno (1), tr. *deem guilty.*

condĭcio, ōnis, f. *terms, offer, principle, condition, position.*

con-dōno (1), tr. *pardon*; c. aliquid (c. dat.) — *overlook something for the sake of.*

con-dūco, xi, ctum (3), tr. *assemble, concentrate*; conductus, *mercenary, hired.*

con-fĕro, tŭli, lātum, ferre, tr. *collect, contribute, compare, ascribe, postpone*; reflex. *withdraw*; c. culpam — *lay the blame*; conlatis signis — *making a sheaf of the standards.*

confertus, a, um, pf. partic. of confercio, *dense, compact, crowded together.*

confestim, adv. *immediately.*

confĭcio, fēci, fectum (3), tr. *complete, accomplish, muster, draw up* (a document), *dress* (leather); confectus, *exhausted, enfeebled*; prima confecta vigilia—*at the end of the first watch.*

con-fīdo, fīsus sum (3), intr. c. dat. or abl. *trust, rely on*; c. inf. *am confident that.*

con-fīgo, xi, xum (3), tr. *fasten, rivet.*
confīnis, e, *conterminous.*
confīnium, i, n. *frontier.*
confirmātio, ōnis, f. *assurance.*
con-firmo (1), tr. *settle, establish, fix, affirm, declare, confirm, keep steady, nerve, reassure*; reflex. *pluck up courage.*
confītsor, fessus sum (2), tr. *admit.*
con-flăgro (1), intr. *am on fire.*
conflicto (1), tr. *harass.*
con-flīgo, xi, ctum (3), intr. *fight*; c. cum—*engage.*
confluens, ntis, m. *confluence.*
con-fluo, xi (3), intr. *flock together.*
con-fundo, fūdi, fūsum (3), tr. *crowd together.*
congrĕdior, gressus sum (3), intr. *engage, join, meet.*
congressus, ūs, m. *meeting, encounter.*
conĭēci, coniectus, see coicio.
coniectūra, ae, f. *guess*; coniecturam capio—*infer.*
coniunctim, adv. *jointly.*
con-iungo, nxi, nctum (3), tr. *join, unite, connect with*; c. civitatem —*form one state*; coniunctus, *closely connected.*
coniunx, iŭgis, f. *wife.*
coniūrātio, ōnis, f. *conspiracy, mutual oath.*
con-iūro (1), intr. *conspire, am sworn in.*
con-laudo (1), tr. *applaud, commend warmly.*
con-lĭgo (1), tr. *pin together.*
con-lŏco (1), tr. *place, post, dispose, settle, find room for, pack, give in marriage.*
conlŏquium, i, n. *conference, talk, gossip.*
con-lŏquor, lŏcūtus sum (3), intr. *converse, confer.*
cōnor (1), tr. *attempt.*
con-quiesco, ēvi, ētum(3), intr. *take a nap.*
conquīro, sīvi, sītum (3), tr. *search for, collect.*
consanguĭneus, i, m. *relative, kinsman.*
conscendo, di, sum (3), tr. *climb, mount*; c. navem—*embark.*
conscientia, ae, f. *consciousness.*
con-scisco, scīvi, scītum (3), tr. *resolve*; c. mortem mihi—*commit suicide.*
conscius, a, um, *conscious.*
con-scrībo, psi, ptum (3), tr. *write, enroll, raise* (troops).
consĕcrātus, a, um, pf. partic. of consecro, *hallowed.*
consector (1), tr. *chase, hunt down.*
consensio, ōnis, f. *unanimity.*
consensus, ūs, m. *consent, union, united action.*
con-sentio, si, sum (4), intr. *agree*; c. cum—*side with, share the designs of, league with.*
con-sĕquor, secūtus sum (3), tr. and intr. *pursue, hunt down, overtake, gain, attain, follow, ensue.*
con-servo (1), tr. *save, spare, protect*; c. ius—*respect, observe rights.*
con-sīdo, sēdi, sessum (3), intr. *encamp, settle, establish oneself, hold a session.*
consĭlium, i, n. *plan, scheme, stratagem, design, decision, judgement, resource, meeting, council of war*; eo consilio ut —*with the intention that*; c. deorum—*providence.*
consĭmĭlis, e, *like.*
con-sisto, stĭti (3), intr. *stand, stay, keep one's position, fall in* (of troops); *lie* (of ships); c.

contra—*make a stand*; c. in —*consist of, depend on*; vita consistit in—*life is spent in.*
consobrīnus, i, m. *kinsman.*
consōlor (1), tr. *reassure, cheer, soothe, speak kindly to.*
conspectus, ūs, m. *view, sight*; in conspectu (c. gen.)—*under the eyes of*; conspectum fero —*dare to look in the face.*
conspĭcio, spexi, spectum (3), tr. *descry, catch sight of, see.*
conspĭcor (1), tr. *observe, descry, notice.*
con-spīro (1), intr. *join a conspiracy.*
constanter, adv. *unanimously, firmly, resolutely.*
constantia, ae, f. *steadfastness, resolution.*
con-sterno, strāvi, strātum (3), tr. *floor.*
con-sterno (1), tr. *thoroughly frighten.*
con-stīpo (1), tr. *crowd together.*
constĭtuo, tui, tūtum (3), tr. *determine, fix, appoint, arrange, organize, station, post, erect*; c. aciem—*form line*; c. naves —*run ships ashore* iv. 23. 6; 24. 2.
con-sto, stĭti (1), intr. *stand, am posted*; constat—*it is agreed, well known*; non satis mihi constat—*I don't quite know*; omnibus constabat—*all agreed*; victoria constat (c. abl.)—*victory costs*; victoria constat penes eos—*victory is theirs*; constat in—*depends on* vii. 84. 4; numerus constat—*the number remains the same.*
constrātus, see consterno.
con-suesco, suēvi, suētum (3), intr. *become accustomed, form a habit*; perf. *am wont.*
consuētūdo, ĭnis, f. *custom, settled policy, principles, intercourse, culture*; c. victus—*standard of living*; c. itineris —*order of march.*
consul, ŭlis, m. *consul*; consule Balbo—*in the consulship of Balbus.*
consŭlo, ui, sultum (3), intr. *deliberate, act in the interests of, look out for*; c. sortibus—*cast lots*; c. civitati—*serve one's country*; c. mihi—*shift for myself*; c. saluti—*consider one's safety*; c. vitae—*spare one's life.*
consulto, adv. *on purpose.*
consulto (1), intr. *consult.*
consultum, i, n. *decree.*
con-sūmo, sumpsi, sumptum (3), tr. *destroy, devour, use up, spend* (time).
con-surgo, surrexi, surrectum (3), intr. *stand up*; consurgitur ex consilio—*the council rose.*
contăbŭlo (1), tr. *furnish with platforms.*
contāgio, ōnis, f. *contact, pollution.*
contāmĭno (1), tr. *stain.*
con-tĕgo, xi, ctum (3), tr. *cover up.*
contemno, tempsi, temptum (3), tr. *despise.*
contemptio, ōnis, f. *contempt.*
contemptus, ūs, m. *contempt*; contemptui est—*is despised.*
con-tendo, di, tum (3), intr. *fight, struggle, strive, exert oneself*; *insist, maintain*; *hasten, push on*; *aim at*; c. inf. *prepare actively*; c. aliquid —*make an attempt.*
contentio, ōnis, f. *struggle, rivalry, regular combat.*
contentus, a, um, pf. partic. of contineo, *satisfied.*
con-texo, xui, xtum (3), tr. *con-*

nect, weave into a whole, construct.

continens, ntis, pres. partic. of contineo, *continuous*; subst. f. *continent.*

continenter, adv. *constantly, without stopping, continuously.*

continentia, ae, f. *self-control.*

contineo, ui, tentum (2), tr. *bound, limit, wall in* iv. 23. 3, *keep, seize, hold back, restrain*; reflex. *remain.*

contingo, tigi, tactum (3), tr. and intr. *touch, fall to one's lot*; c. inter se—*adjoin.*

continuātio, ōnis, f. *continuance.*

continuo, adv. *forthwith, immediately.*

continuus, a, um, *successive, in succession.*

contio, ōnis, f. *harangue, meeting*; contionem habeo, advoco—*hold a parade.*

contrā, adv. *opposite, in opposition, on the other hand*; contra atque dictum erat—*contrary to the agreement*; prep. c. acc. *against, over against, contrary to, in reply to.*

con-trăho, traxi, tractum (3), tr. *assemble, concentrate, reduce in size.*

contrārius, a, um, *opposite*; ex contrario—*on the contrary.*

contrōversia, ae, f. *dispute.*

contŭmēlia, ae, f. *affront, indignity, insult, rough usage.*

convălesco, vălui (3), intr. *recover.*

convallis, is, f. *valley.*

con-vĕho, vexi, vectum (3), tr. *bring together, store.*

con-vĕnio, vēni, ventum (4), intr. *assemble, meet*; convĕnit—*it is agreed, it is proper*; also tr. *meet.*

conventus, ūs, m. *meeting, assizes*; in conventu militum—*on parade.*

con-verto, ti, sum (3), tr. *change, turn about, wheel, direct*; c. iter, *reverse one's march*; c. aciem, signa—*change front*; conversus ad—*in the direction of.*

con-vinco, vīci, victum (3), tr. *prove clearly.*

con-vŏco (1), tr. *call together.*

co-ŏrior, ortus sum (4), intr. *arise, break out.*

cōpia, ae, f. *plenty, abundance, supply*; plur. *wealth, forces.*

cōpiōsus, a, um, *wealthy.*

cōpŭla, ae, f. *grappling-iron.*

cŏr, cordis, n. *heart*; cordi est mihi—*I care for.*

cōram, adv. *personally*; c. adest—*he is here confronting us*; c. perspicio—*I see with my own eyes.*

cŏrium, i, n. *hide, skin.*

cornu, ūs, n. *wing, flank, horn.*

cŏrōna, ae, f. *garland*; sub corona vendo—*sell as slaves*; *ring* (of soldiers).

corpus, ŏris, n. *body.*

cor-rumpo, rūpi, ruptum (3), tr. *destroy.*

cortex, ĭcis, m. *bark.*

Cōrus, i, m. *north-west wind.*

cōtēs, is, f. *reef.*

cŏtīdiānus, a, um, *daily, ordinary, regular*; c. agger—*daily additions to the terrace.*

cŏtīdiē, adv. *daily.*

crassitūdo, ĭnis, f. *thickness.*

crātēs, is, f. *fascine, wicker-work.*

crēber, bra, brum, *frequent, close together.*

crēbro, adv. *frequently.*

crēdo, dĭdi, dĭtum (3), intr. *trust, believe.*

crĕmo (1), tr. *burn.*

crĕo (1), tr. *elect, appoint.*

cresco, crēvi, crētum (3), intr. *become powerful, rise, swell* (of a river).
crŭciātus, ūs, m. *torture, cruel punishment.*
crūdēlĭtās, ātis, f. *cruelty.*
crūdēlĭter, adv. *cruelly.*
crūs, crūris, n. *leg.*
cŭbīle, is, n. *resting-place.*
culmen, ĭnis, n. *summit.*
culpa, ae, f. *blame, fault.*
cultūra, ae, f. *cultivation*; agri c.—*agriculture.*
cultus, ūs, m. *civilization, standard of living*; c. corporis—*training.*
cum, conj. c. indic. *when, as*; cum primum—*as soon as*; cum . . . tum—*not only . . . but also*; c. subj. *when, since, though.*
cum, prep. c. abl. *with*; cum magno periculo—*at great risk.*
cunctātio, ōnis, f. *hesitation, delay.*
cunctor (1), intr. *delay, hesitate.*
cunctus, a, um, *all.*
cŭneātim, adv. *in wedge-shaped masses.*
cŭneus, i, m. *wedge.*
cŭnīcŭlus, i, m. *gallery* (underground), *mine.*
cŭpĭdius, compar. adv. of cupide, *too eagerly.*
cŭpĭdĭtās, ātis, f. *desire, eagerness, greed.*
cŭpĭdus, a, um, c. gen. *fond of, eager for.*
cŭpio, īvi and ĭi, ītum (3), tr. *desire, wish*; c. dat. *am well-disposed to.*
cūr, adv. *why.*
cūra, ae, f. *care*; curae est mihi —*it has my attention.*
cūro (1), tr. c. acc. and ger. *see to, cause.*
currus, ūs, m. *chariot.*
cursus, ūs, m. *rapid charge, speed*; cursum adaequo—*keep pace with*; magno cursu—*at a great pace*; *voyage*; cursum teneo—*keep one's course.*
custōdia, ae, f. *protection, guard.*
custōdio (4), tr. *guard.*
custōs, ōdis, m. *guard*; custodis loco—*as a warden*; custodes pono alicui—*place under surveillance.*

D. = 500; abbreviation of Decimus.
damno (1), tr. *condemn, find guilty.*
damnum, i, n. *loss.*
dē, prep. c. abl. *from, down from*; (of time) *in, at, soon after*; *of, from,* pauci de nostris, captivi de exercitu; *for,* qua de causa, multis de causis; *concerning, about*; de improviso—*unexpectedly*; de consilio—*acting on the advice*; see also on **mersor.**
dēbeo, ui, ĭtum (2), tr. and intr. *owe, ought, am bound* (pass.), *am due*; impers. ii. 27. 5.
dē-cēdo, cessi, cessum (3), intr. *depart, die*; c. dat. *avoid.*
dĕcĕm, num. adj. *ten.*
dē-cerno, crēvi, crētum (3), tr. *appoint, decree, order, determine.*
dē-certo (1), intr. *fight*; d. proelio, pugnā—*fight a decisive battle.*
dēcessus, ūs, m. *departure, ebb* (of the tide).
dēcĭdo, cĭdi (3), intr. *fall down.*
dĕcĭmus, a, um, *tenth.*
dēcĭpio, cēpi, ceptum (3), tr. *deceive.*
dē-clāro (1), tr. *tell.*
dēclīvis, e, *sloping down.*

dēclīvĭtās, ātis, f. *slope*; ad declivitatem—*downward.*
dēcrētum, i, n. *decree, decision, award.*
dĕcŭmānus, a, um, *of the tenth* (cohort); d. porta—*rear-gate* (of camp).
dĕcŭrio, ōnis, m. *commander* (of cavalry).
dē-curro, curri and cucurri, cursum (3), intr. *hurry down, charge down.*
dēdĕcus, ŏris, n. *disgrace.*
dēdĭtĭcius, a, um, *surrendered.*
dēdĭtio, ōnis, f. *surrender*; in deditionem accipio—*admit to surrender, receive the submission of.*
dē-do, dĭdi, dĭtum (3), tr. *give up*; reflex. *surrender, attach oneself*; deditus, *devoted.*
dē-dūco, xi, ctum (3), tr. *lead back, withdraw, lead, fetch, bring, reduce, tempt, win over, launch* (a ship), *take home* (a wife); d. rem in summum periculum—*precipitate a disaster.*
dēfătīgātio, ōnis, f. *exhaustion.*
dē-fătīgo (1), tr. *wear out, tire out.*
dēfectio, ōnis, f. *defection, revolt.*
dēfendo, di, sum (3), tr. *defend, protect, ward off*; d. bellum—*repel attack.*
dēfensio, ōnis, f. *defence.*
dēfensor, ōris, m. *defender, bulwark.*
dē-fĕro, tŭli, lātum, ferre, tr. *carry down*; naves delatae sunt—*the ships drifted down*; *refer* (a question), *report, deliver* (a letter), *entrust, confer*; delatus — *rushing, tumbling down.*
dēfessus, a, um, pf. partic. of defetiscor, *exhausted, enfeebled.*
dēfĭcio, fēci, fectum (3), intr. *fail, am wanting, revolt, withdraw*; d. animo—*lose heart*; omnia me deficiunt—*am at my wits' end.*
dē-fīgo, xi, xum (3), tr. *fix down*; pass. *stick.*
dē-fīnio (4), tr. *fix.*
dēformis, e, *ugly, unsightly.*
dēfŭgio, fūgi (3), tr. *shun, avoid.*
dēicio, iēci, iectum (3), tr. *throw, pull, strike, sweep down*; reflex. *spring down*; *demolish, oust, dislodge*; spe deiectus—*disappointed.*
dēiectus, ūs, m. *declivity, abrupt descent.*
dĕinceps, adv. *successively, in succession.*
dĕindĕ, adv. *secondly, next, then.*
dēlātus, see **defero.**
dēlecto (1), tr. *please*; pass. c. abl. *delight in.*
dēleo, ēvi, ētum (2), tr. *wipe out, destroy.*
dēlībĕro (1), tr. and intr. *consider, reflect, discuss.*
dēlībro (1), tr. *strip off bark.*
dēlictum, i, n. *misdemeanour.*
dēlĭgo, lēgi, lectum (3), tr. *choose*; delectus, *chosen, picked.*
dē-lĭgo (1), tr. *tie, moor*; deligari ad ancoras—*ride at anchor.*
dēlĭtesco, ui (3), intr. *lie in wait.*
dēmentia, ae, f. *folly.*
dē-mĕto, messui, messum (3), *reap, cut.*
dē-mĭgro (1), intr. c. de, ex—*abandon; leave one's post.*
dē-mĭnuo, ui, ūtum (3), tr. *lessen, diminish, slight*; d. de —*abate, disregard.*
dē-mitto, mīsi, missum (3), tr. *let down, put down, plant*; reflex. *move down, descend*; d. me animo—*lose heart*; d. caput—*bow, stoop*; demissus, *low-lying.*

dēmo, dempsi, demptum (3), tr. *take down.*
dē-monstro (1), tr. *allege, mention, explain.*
dē-mŏror (1), tr. *delay, oppose, obstruct.*
dēmum, adv. *at last, indeed.*
dē-nĕgo (1), tr. *deny, refuse.*
dēni, ae, a, distrib. num. *ten each, ten.*
dēnĭquĕ, adv. *at length, finally, at least, at any rate, in short.*
densus, a, um, *thick, close, crowded.*
dē-nuntio (1), tr. *warn, threaten, declare.*
dē-pello, pŭli, pulsum (3), tr. *drive, drive away, dislodge.*
dē-perdo, dĭdi, dĭtum (3), tr. *lose.*
dē-pĕreo, ii, īre, intr. *perish, am destroyed.*
dē-pōno, pŏsui, pŏsĭtum (3), tr. *lay aside, lay down, deposit, leave, give up* (hope), *lose*; d. memoriam (c. gen.)—*forget.*
dē-pŏpŭlo, dēpŏpŭlor (1), tr. *devastate.*
dē-porto (1), tr. *remove.*
dē-posco, pŏposci (3), tr. *ask earnestly for, demand.*
dēprĕcātor, ōris, m. *intercessor.*
dē-prĕcor (1), tr. and intr. *beg earnestly, sue for mercy*; d. mortem—*pray for one's life.*
dē-prĕhendo, di, sum (3), tr. *catch, seize.*
dē-pugno (1), intr. *fight it out.*
dērectē, adv. *vertically.*
dērectus, a, um, *straight, vertical, at right angles.*
dērĭgo, rexi, rectum (3), tr. *draw up.*
dērīvo (1), tr. *draw off* (water).
dē-rŏgo (1), tr. *withdraw, remove*; his fides derogatur—*they are not trusted.*
descendo, di, sum (3), intr. *descend, come down*; d. ad—*resort to, venture on.*
dē-sĕro, rui, rtum (3), tr. *abandon, leave in the lurch*; desertus locus—*a lonely spot.*
dēsertor, ōris, m. *deserter.*
dēsīdĕro (1), tr. *lose, want, require*; pass. *am lacking, wanting, missing.*
dēsĭdia, ae, f. *laziness.*
dē-signo (1), tr. *indicate.*
dēsĭlio, sĭlui, sultum (4), intr. *jump down*; d. equo—*dismount.*
dē-sisto, stĭti (3), intr. *cease*; c. abl. *abandon.*
despectus, ūs, m. *view* (from a height).
despērātio, ōnis, f. *despair.*
de-spēro (1), intr. and tr. c. dat. or de, *despair, despair of, distrust*; desperatis rebus—*in despair*; desperatus, i, m. *desperado.*
despĭcio, spexi, spectum (3), tr. *despise, look down on.*
de-spŏlio (1), tr. *rob, deprive.*
destĭno (1), tr. *bind, make fast, get hold of*; destinatus operi—*engaged on the works.*
destĭtuo, ui, ūtum (3), tr. *play false, desert.*
de-stringo, nxi, ctum (3), tr. *draw* (sword).
dē-sum, fui, esse, intr. *am wanting*; c. dat. *fail, desert.*
dēsŭper, adv. *from above.*
dētĕrior, ius, *worse, smaller*; vectigalia deteriora facere—*diminish the tribute.*
dē-terreo, ui, ĭtum (2), tr. *deter, intimidate, prevent by fear.*
dē-testor (1), tr. *curse*; omnibus precibus detestatus—*having heartily cursed.*

dētĭneo, tĭnui, tentum (2), tr. *detain, keep back.*
dē-trăho, xi, ctum (3), tr. *take off, pull off, take away, withdraw*; d. equo aliquem—*dismount a man.*
dētrecto (1), tr. *shirk.*
dētrīmentōsus, a, um, *detrimental.*
dētrīmentum, i, n. *loss, damage, disadvantage, drawback.*
dētrūdo, si, sum (3), tr. *pull off.*
dē-turbo (1), tr. *drive off, send flying.*
dē-ūro, ussi, ustum (3), tr. *burn up.*
deus, i, m. *god.*
dē-vĕho, xi, ctum (3), tr. *bring.*
dē-vĕnio, vēni, ventum (4), intr. *make one's way, come.*
dēvexus, a, um, *shelving.*
dē-vinco, vīci, victum (3), tr. *conquer, subdue.*
dē-vŏco (1), tr. *call*; d. in dubium—*risk.*
dē-vŏveo, vōvi, vōtum (2), tr. *devote, dedicate*; devotus, i, m. *a devoted follower.*
dexter, tra, trum (tĕra, tĕrum), *on the right hand, right*; dextra, ae, f. *right hand.*
dĭcio, ōnis, f. *sovereignty, sway.*
dĭco (1), tr. *dedicate*; d. me in servitutem, in clientelam—*bind myself to serve, as a dependant.*
dīco, xi, ctum (3), tr. *say, speak, mention, name, fix*; d. ius—*administer justice*; d. causam—*plead one's cause.*
dictio, ōnis, f. *pleading.*
dictum, i, n. *saying, orders.*
di-dūco, xi, ctum (3), tr. *separate, break up.*
diēs, ēi, c. (plur. masc.), *day, time*; diem ex die—*from day to day.*
dif-fĕro, distŭli, dīlātum, differre, tr. and intr. *spread, differ.*
diffĭcĭlis, e, *difficult.*
difficultās, ātis, f. *difficulty.*
diffĭcĭlius, adv. compar. of difficulter, *with greater difficulty.*
diffīdo, fīsus sum (3), intr. c. dat. *doubt, feel anxious for*; d. meis rebus—*am desperate.*
diffluo (3), intr. *flow apart, separate.*
diffundo, fūdi, fūsum (3), tr. *spread out.*
dĭgĭtus, i, m. *finger*; d. pollex, *thumb.*
dignĭtās, ātis, f. *dignity, rank, distinction*; dignitatis meae est—*it is consistent with my dignity.*
dignus, a, um, adj. c. abl. *worthy of.*
di-iūdĭco (3), tr. *decide.*
dīlectus, ūs, m. *levy.*
dīlĭgenter, adv. *carefully, thoroughly*; parum d.—*carelessly.*
dīlĭgentia, ae, f. *vigilance, care, energy.*
dīlĭgo, lexi, lectum (3), tr. *love.*
dī-mētior, mensus sum (4), tr. *measure out, measure.*
dīmĭcātio, ōnis, f. *fight.*
dī-mĭco (1), intr. *fight.*
dīmĭdius, a, um, *half*; dimidium, i, n. *a half.*
dī-mitto, mīsi, missum (3), tr. *dismiss, send about, allow to depart, abandon, forgo, quit, lose*; d. tempus—*waste time*; d. oppugnationem—*raise a siege.*
dīrĭmo, ēmi, emptum (3), tr. *break off.*
dīrĭpio, rĭpui, reptum (3), tr. *plunder, seize.*
dis-cēdo, cessi, cessum (3), intr. *withdraw, move away, depart*; d. ab armis—*lay down arms*;

d. ab officio—*abandon a loyal attitude.*
disceptātor, ōris, m. *umpire, arbitrator.*
dis-cerno, crēvi, crētum (3), tr. *keep apart.*
discessus, ūs, m. *departure, retreat.*
discĭplīna, ae, f. *discipline, training, organization, study, doctrine.*
disclūdo, si, sum (3), tr. *keep apart, separate.*
disco, dĭdĭci (3), tr. *learn.*
discrīmen, ĭnis, n. *peril, crisis.*
discŭtio, cussi, cussum (3), tr. *clear away.*
disĭcio, iēci, iectum (3), tr. *disperse*; disiectus, *disordered.*
dispār, ăris, *unequal, lower, inferior.*
dispăro (1), tr. *separate.*
dispergo, si, sum (3), tr. *scatter.*
dispĭcio, spexi, spectum (3), tr. *discern.*
dis-pōno, pŏsui, pŏsĭtum (3), tr. *post, arrange, form up, place at intervals, in different positions.*
dispŭtātio, ōnis, f. *argument.*
dis-pŭto (1), intr. *discuss, argue.*
dissensio, ōnis, f. *conflict, quarrelling.*
dis-sentio, si, sum (4), intr. *disagree.*
dis-sĕro, sēvi, sĭtum (3), tr. *scatter, plant.*
dis-sĭmŭlo (1), tr. *hide.*
dissĭpo (1), tr. *scatter.*
dis-suādeo, si, sum (2), tr. *oppose.*
distĭneo, tĭnui, tentum (2), tr. *keep apart, break up, isolate, hinder.*
di-sto, āre, intr. *stand apart*; quantum tignorum iunctura distabat—*the interval between the* (pairs of) *piles.*
dis-trăho, xi, ctum (3), tr. *pull to pieces.*
dis-trĭbuo, ui, ūtum (3), tr. *distribute, assign, divide.*
distŭli, see **differo.**
dītissĭmus, superl. of dives, *rich.*
diū, adv. *for long*; compar. diūtius, *any longer, too long.*
diurnus, a, um, *by day.*
diūtinus, a, um, *lasting, long.*
diūturnĭtās, ātis, f. *long duration.*
diūturnus, a, um, *long, lasting.*
dīversus, a, um, pf. partic. of diverto, *separated, remote, different*; d. ab—*facing away from.*
dīvĭdo, vīsi, vīsum (3), tr. *divide, separate.*
dīvīnus, a, um, *divine, of the gods.*
do, dĕdi, dătum, dăre, tr. *give, grant, offer*; d. arbitros—*appoint umpires*; d. in fugam—*put to flight*; se dare vento—*sail before the wind*; d. manūs—*yield.*
dŏceo, cui, ctum (3), tr. *explain, point out, show, inform.*
dŏcŭmentum, i, n. *evidence, warning.*
dŏleo, ui, ĭtum (2), intr. *suffer, smart, feel resentment.*
dŏlor, ōris, m. *grief, grievance, indignation.*
dŏlus, i, m. *trickery.*
dŏmestĭcus, a, um, *home-grown, intestine.*
dŏmĭcĭlium, i, n. *abode, dwelling.*
dŏmĭnor (1), intr. *hold sway.*
dŏmĭnus, i, m. *lord, master.*
dŏmus, ūs, f. *house*; domi, *at home, in one's own country*; domo, *from home*; domum, *home, to one's home* or *country.*
dōno (1), tr. *present.*

dōnum, i, n. *gift.*
dorsus, i, m. *hump* (of a hill).
dōs, dōtis, f. *dowry.*
drŭĭdes, um, m. *druids.*
dŭbĭtātio, ōnis, f. *doubt, hesitation.*
dŭbĭto (1), intr. *doubt, hesitate, have doubts*; dubitantes, *waverers.*
dŭbius, a, um, *doubtful.*
dŭcenti, ae, a, 200.
dūco, xi, ctum (3), tr. *lead, bring, consider, believe, prolong, protract, keep waiting*; d. in matrimonium—*marry* (a wife); d. fossam, murum — *dig a trench, build a wall.*
duotus, ūs, m. *leadership.*
dum, conj. *while, until.*
duo, ae, o, *two, both.*
duŏdĕcĭmus, a, um, *twelfth.*
duodēni, ae, a, *twelve each.*
dŭplex, plĭcis, *double.*
dŭplĭco (1), tr. *make double, double.*
dūrĭtia, ae, f. *hardship.*
dūro (1), tr. *harden.*
dūrus, a, um, *hard, vigorous, difficult*; (si) quid durius—*a check, a disaster.*
dux, dŭcis, m. *leader, general, chieftain, guide.*

ē, ex, prep. c. abl. *out of, from* (of cause, place, and time); ex itinere—*on the march, without stopping*; ex fuga—*in the flight*; una ex parte—*on one side*; ex equis—*on horseback*; ex communi consensu — *by agreement*; ex parte—*in some measure*; ex consuetudine—*according to custom*; ex nivibus—*owing to the melting of the snow*; facilia ex difficillimis redigo—*make things easy from being very difficult.*

eā, adv. *by that way.*
ē-disco, dĭdĭci (3), tr. *learn by heart.*
ēdĭtus, a, um, pf. partic. of ēdo, *rising high.*
ē-do, dĭdi, dĭtum (3), *give forth*; e. in (c. acc.)—*inflict upon.*
ē-dŏceo, cui, ctum (2), tr. *explain, teach carefully, school.*
ē-dūco, xi, ctum (3), tr. *bring, march out, withdraw*; e. gladium—*draw sword.*
effēmĭno (1), tr. *enervate, make effeminate, enfeeble.*
effercio, farsi, fertum (4), tr. *pack tightly.*
ef-fĕro, extŭli, ēlātum, efferre, tr. *take, carry, lift, publish, spread* (news); pass. *am elated.*
effĭcio, fēci, fectum (3), tr. *make, render, accomplish, achieve, get together*; e. ut—*cause, bring it about*; tantum efficiunt—*they become so efficient.*
ef-fŏdio, fōdi, fossum (3), tr. *gouge out.*
ef-fŭgio, fūgi, fŭgĭtum (3), tr. and intr. *escape.*
ef-fundo, fūdi, fūsum (3), reflex. *spread over, make a dash.*
ĕgeo, ui (2), c. abl. and gen. *lack, am without*; egens, *needy.*
ĕgestās, ātis, f. *privation.*
ĕgŏ, ĕgŏmet, pers. pron. *I, I myself.*
ēgrĕdior, gressus sum (3), intr. *go out, march out, get clear*; e. navi—*disembark.*
ēgrĕgiē, adv. *exceedingly, strongly.*
ēgrĕgius, a, um, *exceptional, eminent.*
ēgressus, ūs, m. *landing-place.*
ēicio, ēiēci, ēiectum (3), tr. *banish*; reflex. *rush out*; e. in litus—*drive ashore.*
ē-lābor, lapsus sum (3), intr. *escape.*

ēlātus, see **effero**.
ēlĭcio, lĭcui, lĭcĭtum (3), tr. *entice*.
ēlĭgo, lēgi, lectum (3), tr. *pick out*; electus, *a picked man*.
ēmĭgro (1), intr. *depart*; e. domo—*leave house and home*.
ēmĭneo, ui (2), intr. *project*.
ēmĭnus, adv. *from a distance*.
ē-mitto, mīsi, missum (3), tr. *send out*, *discharge* (weapon), *drop*.
ĕmo, ēmi, emptum (3), tr. *buy*.
ē-nascor, nātus sum, nasci, intr. *grow out, shoot out*.
ĕnĭm, conj. *for*.
ē-nuntio (1), tr. *disclose, report*.
ĕo, īvi or ii, ĭtum, īre, intr. *go*.
ĕo, adv. *thither, there*; eo . . . quod—*on this account . . . that*; eo melius quo saepius—*the oftener the better*; eo magis—*especially, all the more*.
ĕōdem, adv. *to the same place, in the same direction*.
ephippiātus, a, um, *equipped with saddle*.
ephippium, i, n. *saddle*.
ĕpistŭla, ae, f. *letter, dispatch*.
ĕpŭlae, ārum, f. *banquet*.
ĕquĕs, ĭtis, *horseman, trooper, knight* (see notes); plur. *cavalry*.
ĕquester, tris, tre, *on horseback*; e. proelium—*cavalry combat*.
ĕquĭtātus, ūs, m. *cavalry, knighthood*.
ĕquus, i, m. *horse*.
ērectus, a, um, pf. partic. of erigo, *lofty*.
ergā, prep. c. acc. *towards*.
ergo, adv. *therefore, then*.
ērĭgo, rexi, rectum (3), tr. *raise*; reflex. *stand up*.
ērĭpio, ui, reptum (3), tr. *take away, rob, loot, rescue*; e. me ne—*escape from*.
erro (1), intr. *am wrong, mistaken*.
ē-rumpo, rūpi, ruptum (3), intr. *break out*.
ēruptio, ōnis, f. *sortie*.
essĕdārius, i, m. *charioteer*.
essĕdum, i, n. *chariot*.
et, conj. *and*; et . . . et—*both . . . and, not only . . . but also*.
ĕtiam, conj. *also, too, even, moreover, actually*.
etsī, conj. *although, even if*.
ē-vādo, si, sum, intr. *make one's way, escape*.
ē-vello, velli, vulsum (3), tr. *pull out*.
ē-vĕnio, vēni, ventum (4), intr. *turn out*.
ēventus, ūs, m. *result*; e. fortunae—*vicissitudes of fortune*; e. belli—*the ups and downs of war*; e. navium—*what happened to the ships*; eventum rei experiri—*await developments*.
ē-vŏco (1), tr. *summon, call out, challenge, lead away*; evocatus, i, m. *veteran*.
ē-vŏlo (1), intr. *rush out*.
ex, see **e**.
exactus, see **exigo**.
ex-ăgĭto (1), tr. *harass*.
exāmĭno (1), tr. *weigh*.
exănĭmo (1), tr. *kill*; pass. *perish*; exanimatus, *breathless, fainting*.
ex-ardesco, arsi (3), intr. *blaze forth* (fig.).
ex-audio (4), tr. *hear* (from a distance, or through obstacles).
ex-cēdo, cessi, cessum (3), intr. c. abl. or ex, *leave, quit*.
ex-cello, ui (3), intr. *excel, stand first*.
excelsus, a, um, *high*.
excepto (1), tr. *haul up*.
excīdo, cīdi, cīsum (3), tr. *hew down*.

excĭpio, cēpi, ceptum (3), tr. *catch, meet, encounter, parry, take, take up, sustain, support, relieve*; e. vim fluminis—*break the force of the current*; clamor excipit—*the shout is taken up* vii. 88. 2.
ex-cĭto (1), tr. *rouse, raise, set up, build, kindle* (fire); excitatus, *attracted.*
exclūdo, si, sum (3), tr. *shut out, cut off, hinder, prevent.*
ex-cōgĭto (1), tr. *think of, devise.*
ex-crŭcio (1), tr. *torture.*
excŭbĭtor, ōris, m. *guard, bivouac.*
ex-cŭbo, ui, ĭtum, āre, intr. *keep watch, bivouac.*
exculco (1), tr. *trample.*
excursio, ōnis, f. *sortie.*
excūsātio, ōnis, f. *excuses.*
excūso (1), reflex. *apologize.*
exemplum, i, n. *usage, precedent*; exempla cruciatusque —'*exemplary*' *tortures.*
ex-eo, ii, ĭtum, īre, intr. *go out, pass.*
exerceo, ui, ĭtum (2), tr. *train, drill, practise*; pass. *toil.*
exercĭtātio, ōnis, f. *training, experience, practised skill.*
exercĭtātus, a, um, pf. partic. of exercito, *thoroughly practised*; superioribus proeliis exercitati—*seasoned veterans.*
exercĭtus, ūs, m. *army.*
ex-haurio, hausi, haustum (4), tr. *draw out, take out.*
exĭgo, ēgi, actum (3), tr. *spend* (time); exactā aestate—*summer being over.*
exĭguē, adv. *barely.*
exĭguĭtās, ātis, f. *fewness, shortness, small size.*
exĭguus, a, um, *small.*
existĭmātio, ōnis, f. *opinion, judgement.*
existĭmo (1), tr. *believe.*
exĭtus, ūs, m. *egress, passage* (out), *result, upshot, fate.*
expĕdio (4), tr. *get ready, secure*; expeditus — *mobile, in light marching order, free for action, unencumbered, travelling without encumbrances* vi. 25, (of a place or route) *free from obstacles, clear, convenient,* (of corn supply) *uninterrupted*; expediti, *light troops.*
expĕdītio, ōnis, f. *raid.*
ex-pello, pŭli, pulsum (3), tr. *drive out, dispel.*
expĕrior, pertus sum (4), tr. *try, put to the proof.*
ex-pio (1), tr. *make good*; e. incommodum—*repair a loss.*
ex-pleo, ēvi, ētum (2), tr. *fill up, make good*; e. altitudinem—*reach a height.*
explōrātor, ōris, m. *patrol.*
ex-plōro (1), tr. *make out, find out, reconnoitre*; explorata victoria—*certain victory.*
ex-pōno, pŏsui, pŏsĭtum (3), tr. *recount, report*; e. navibus—*land* (troops); expositus, *in full view.*
ex-porto (1), tr. *carry off.*
ex-posco, pŏposci (3), tr. *demand eagerly.*
exprĭmo, pressi, pressum (3), tr. *press up, raise up, squeeze out*; e. vocem ab—*get a word out of.*
expugnātio, ōnis, f. *taking, storming.*
ex-pugno (1), tr. *storm, capture, take, carry, overpower.*
exquīro, sīvi, sītum (3), tr. *discover, ask for, inquire.*
ex-sĕquor, sĕcūtus sum (3), tr. *prosecute*; e. ius meum—*assert my rights.*
ex-sĕro, rui, rtum (3), tr. *put*

forth; umeris exsertis—*with shoulders uncovered.*
ex-sisto, extĭti and exstĭti (3), intr. *stand out, project, arise, occur, break out.*
ex-specto (1), tr. and intr. *wait, await, anticipate, wait to see.*
ex-spŏlio (1), tr. *rob.*
exstinguo, nxi, nctum (3), tr. *put an end to, eclipse.*
ex-sto, āre, intr. *stand out, project.*
ex-struo, xi, ctum (3), tr. *erect.*
exsul, ŭlis, m. *an exile.*
extĕrior, ius, compar. adj. *outer, outside*; superl. **extrēmus,** a, um, *most distant, the end of, last, rear, extreme*; extrema fossa—*the end of the trench*; in extremis rebus—*in extremest peril*; extremum auxilium experior—*try a forlorn hope*; extrema fames—*extremities of hunger.*
ex-terreo, ui, ĭtum (2), tr. *frighten greatly.*
ex-tĭmesco, tĭmui (3), tr. *fear greatly, dread.*
ex-torqueo, torsi, tortum (2), tr. *extort, wring.*
extrā, prep. c. acc. *outside.*
ex-trăho, traxi, tractum (3), tr. *protract, spin out.*
extrēmus, see **exterior.**
ex-trūdo, si, sum (3), tr. *keep out.*
exuo, ui, ūtum (3), tr. *strip, rob, deprive*; e. aliquem armis—*make one drop his weapons.*
ex-ūro, ussi, ustum (3), tr. *burn, consume by fire.*

făber, bri, m. *skilled workman, army mechanic.*
făcĭlĕ, adv. *easily.*
făcĭlis, e, *easy, practicable.*
făcĭnus, ŏris, n. *crime, guilt, villany.*
făcio, fēci, factum (3), tr. *make, form, construct, do, act*; f. fidem—*convince*; f. finem—*put an end*; f. verba pro—*intercede for.*
factio, ōnis, f. *party*; plur. *rival groups, party spirit.*
factum, i, n. *act, exploit.*
făcultās, ātis, f. *opportunity, means, supply, store*; plur. *wealth, resources.*
fāgus, i, f. *beech.*
fallo, fĕfelli, falsum (3), tr. *deceive*; fallendo, *by trickery.*
falsus, a, um, pf. partic. of fallo, *false.*
falx, cis, f. *sickle, hook.*
fāma, ae, f. *news, report, fame.*
fămēs, is, f. *hunger, famine.*
fămilia, ae, f. *family, slaves.*
fămiliāris, e, *one's own*; f. res—*private fortune*; subst. *intimate friend.*
fămĭliārĭtās, ātis, f. *friendship.*
fās, n. indecl. *right*; fas est—*it is fated*; non fas—*impious.*
fastīgātē, adv. *like a roof or gable.*
fastīgātus, a, um, *sloping down.*
fastīgium, i, n. *slope, angle, summit.*
fātum, i, n. *fate.*
făveo, fāvi, fautum (2), intr. c. dat. *favour.*
fax, făcis, f. *fire-brand.*
fēlīcitās, ātis, f. *good fortune.*
fēlīciter, adv. *fortunately, well.*
fēmĭna, ae, f. *woman, female.*
fĕmur, fĕmĭnis and fĕmŏris, n. *thigh.*
fĕra, ae, f. *wild animal.*
fĕrax, ācis, *fertile.*
fĕrē, adv. *almost, generally.*
fĕro, tŭli, lātum, ferre, tr. and intr. *carry, bring, bear, endure*; ventus fert—*wind blows*; opinio fert—*it is believed*; con-

suetudo fert—*it is customary*; ut natura montis ferebat—*according to the lie of the hill*; pass. *rush, flow* (of a river); f. tempestatem — *weather a gale*; f. loco ignominiae—*regard as a disgrace*; f. laudem—*get credit*; f. responsum—*get an answer*; f. impune iniurias —*commit injuries with impunity*; moleste, graviter fero —*am annoyed, indignant at.*

ferrāmentum, i, n. *iron tool.*

ferrāria, ae, f. *iron-mine.*

ferrĕus, a, um, *of iron, iron.*

ferrum, i, n. *iron, sword.*

fertĭlis, e, *fertile.*

fertĭlĭtās, ātis, f. *fertility.*

fĕrus, a, um, *fierce, savage.*

fervĕfactus, a, um, *heated, burning, boiling.*

fervens, ntis, *red-hot.*

fībŭla, ae, f. *brace.*

fĭdēlis, e, *faithful, loyal.*

fĭdēs, ēi, f. *loyalty, confidence, allegiance, protection*; per fidem —*under a pledge*; fidem do—*pledge myself*; fidem facio—*convince*; fidem sequor (c. gen.) —*trust the good faith of, throw in my lot with*; in fidem venio, me permitto (c. gen.)—*place myself under the protection of*; in fidem recipio—*admit to terms.*

fĭdūcia, ae, f. *confidence.*

fĭgūra, ae, f. *shape, build* (of ships).

fīlia, ae, f. *daughter.*

fīlius, i, m. *son.*

fingo, nxi, fictum (3), tr. *invent, conceive*; ficta ad voluntatem —*lies told to please*; f. vultum —*assume an expression, change one's looks.*

fīnio (4), tr. *limit, define, bound, measure.*

fīnis, is, m. *end*; plur. *frontier, boundary, territory.*

fīnĭtĭmus, a, um, *neighbouring*; subst. *neighbour.*

fīo, factus sum, fĭĕri, intr. *happen, become, am, am done, am made.*

firmĭter, adv. *firmly*; f. insisto —*get a firm foothold.*

firmĭtūdo, ĭnis, f. *solidity, strength.*

firmo (1), tr. *strengthen, fortify.*

firmus, a, um, *strong, stable, trustworthy.*

fistūca, ae, f. *pile-driver.*

flāgĭto (1), tr. *demand.*

flamma, ae, f. *flame.*

flecto, xi, xum (3), tr. *turn, bend.*

fleo, flēvi, flētum (2), intr. *weep.*

flo (1), intr. *blow.*

flōrens, ntis, *flourishing, influential.*

flōs, flōris, m. *flower.*

fluctus, ūs, m. *wave.*

flūmen, ĭnis, n. *river, current.*

fluo, xi, xum (3), intr. *flow.*

fŏdio, fōdi, fossum (3), tr. *dig.*

foedus, ĕris, n. *treaty, compact.*

fóre, fut. inf. of sum.

fŏrīs, adv. *outside, without.*

forma, ae, f. *shape, lines* (of a ship).

fors, fortis, f. *chance.*

fortis, e, *brave, courageous.*

fortĭter, adv. *bravely, resolutely.*

fortĭtūdo, ĭnis, f. *bravery, valour.*

fortuīto, adv. *by chance.*

fortūna, ae, f. *fate, luck, fortune*; plur. *possessions.*

fortūnātus, a, um, *rich, prosperous.*

fŏrum, i, n. *market-place.*

fossa, ae, f. *trench.*

fŏvea, ae, f. *pit.*

frango, frēgi, fractum (3), tr. *break, wreck, overwhelm.*

frāter, tris, m. *brother.*
frāternus, a, um, *of a brother.*
fraus, dis, f. *deception, trick.*
frĕmĭtus, ūs, m. *hubbub, hum of voices.*
frĕquens, ntis, *in large numbers.*
frētus, a, um, c. abl. *relying on.*
frīgĭdus, a, um, *cold.*
frīgus, ŏris, n. *cold*; plur. *cold climate.*
frons, ntis, f. *forehead, front*; a fronte—*in front.*
fructuōsus, a, um, *fertile.*
fructus, ūs, m. *fruit, revenue, interest, prize, reward.*
frūges, um, *fruits of the earth, crops*, i.e. *corn and pulse.*
frūmentārius, a, um, *abounding in corn, belonging to corn or provisions*; res frumentaria—*food supplies.*
frūmentātio, ōnis, f. *getting corn, foraging.*
frūmentor (1), intr. *fetch corn.*
frūmentum, i, n. *corn, grain*; plur. *standing corn, crops.*
fruor, fructus sum, frui, intr. c. abl. *enjoy.*
frustrā, adv. *in vain*; non frustra—*with great effect.*
fŭga, ae, f. *flight, rout, escape.*
fŭgio, fūgi, fŭgĭtum (3), tr. and intr. *avoid, flee, fly.*
fŭgĭtīvus, a, um, *runaway*; subst. *deserter, runaway slave.*
fŭgo (1), tr. *rout, put to flight.*
fūmo (1), intr. *smoke.*
fūmus, i, m. *smoke.*
funda, ae, f. *sling.*
fundĭtor, ōris. m. *slinger.*
fundo, fūdi, fūsum (3), tr. *pour down, rout.*
fūnebria, ium, n. *obsequies, funeral rites.*
fungor, functus sum (3), intr. c. abl. *perform.*
fūnis, is, m. *rope, cable.*
fūnus, ĕris, n. *funeral.*
fŭror, ōris, m. *passion, frenzy.*
furtum, i, n. *theft.*
fūsĭlis, e, *plastic.*
fŭtūrus, fut. partic. of **sum.**

gaesum, i, n. *javelin.*
gălĕa, ae, f. *helmet.*
gallīna, ae, f. *fowl.*
gaudeo, gāvīsus sum (2), intr. *am delighted.*
gĕner, ĕri, m. *son-in-law.*
gĕnĕrātim, adv. *by tribes.*
gens, ntis, f. *clan, people.*
gĕnus, ĕris, n. *race, family, tribe, class, kind, mode, nature.*
gĕro, gessi, gestum (3), tr. *carry on, do*; pass. *go on, happen*; g. magistratum—*hold office*; g. rem—*fight*; bene rem g.—*strike a decisive blow*; male rem g.—*am a bungler.*
glădius, i, m. *sword.*
glans, ndis, f. *bullet.*
glēba, ae, f. *lump.*
glōria, ae, f. *renown.*
glōrior (1), c. abl. *boast of.*
grandis, e, *large.*
grātia, ae, f. *popularity, credit, influence, goodwill, favour*; gratiam refero—*show gratitude*; gratiam habeo—*be grateful*; plur. *thanks.*
grātŭlātio, ōnis, f. *congratulation, joy, satisfaction.*
grātŭlor (1), intr. *congratulate.*
grātus, a, um, *acceptable.*
grăvis, e, *hard, severe, grievous, trying, perilous*; g. caerimonia—*solemn rite*; gravioris aetatis—*of advanced years*; quid gravius—*anything serious, a disaster.*
grăvĭter, adv. *heavily, seriously, grievously, harshly, violently*;

g. fero—*feel indignant at*; g. doleo—*suffer bitterly*; gravius accido—*fall with considerable effect.*
grăvor (1), intr. *raise objections.*
gŭbernātor, ōris, m. *helmsman, captain.*
gusto (1), tr. *taste.*

hăbeo, ui, ĭtum (2), tr. *have, hold, keep, consider*; h. circum me —*keep in attendance*; h. eodem loco—*treat the same*; h. numero (c. gen.), h. pro (c. abl.) —*treat as, consider as*; h. orationem—*deliver a speech*; h. censum—*take a census*; h. aditum—*admit of approach*; sibi persuasum habere—*to be convinced.*
haesĭto (1), intr. *stick*; haesitantes—*bogged.*
hāmus, i, m. *hook.*
harpăgo, ōnis, m. *grappling-hook.*
haud, adv. *not.*
hērēdĭtās, ātis, f. *an inheritance.*
hīberna, ōrum, n. *winter camp, winter quarters.*
hīc, adv. *here, in this case.*
hĭc, haec, hōc, *this, the following, of this sort*; *he, she, it, they*; hoc . . . quod—*in this respect . . . that*; hoc facilius—*the more easily*; his paucis diebus —*in the next few days.*
hĭĕmo (1), intr. *winter.*
hiems, ĕmis, f. *storm, bad weather, winter.*
hinc, adv. *hence, from here.*
hŏmo, ĭnis, m. *man, human being.*
hŏnestus, a, um, *excellent, worthy*; honesto loco natus—*of good birth.*
hŏnōrĭfĭcus, a, um, *complimentary.*
hŏnōs, ōris, m. *honour, consideration, public office.*
hōra, ae, f. *hour.*
horreo, ui (2), tr. *dread.*
horrĭbĭlis, e, *formidable.*
horrĭdus, a, um, *wild.*
hortor (1), tr. *harangue, urge, encourage.*
hospĕs, ĭtis, m. *guest, friend.*
hospĭtium, i, n. *hospitable relations*; hospitio alicuius utor—*am on friendly terms with one.*
hostis, is, m. *enemy.*
hūc, adv. *hither, to this.*
hūmānĭtās, ātis, f. *refinement.*
hūmānus, a, um, *civilized.*
hŭmĭlis, e, *low, shallow,* (of a ship) *insignificant*; humiles, *the lower orders.*
hŭmĭlĭtās, ātis, f. *insignificance, low free-board* (of a ship).

iăceo, ui (2), intr. *lie*; iacens, *prostrate body.*
iăcio, iēci, iactum (3), tr. *throw*; i. ancoram—*cast anchor*; i. aggerem—*throw up a terrace.*
iacto (1), tr. *throw about, jerk, discuss.*
iactūra, ae, f. *expenditure, loss.*
iăcŭlum, i, n. *dart.*
iam, adv. *now, already, by this time*; with neg. *no longer.*
ĭbi, adv. *there.*
ictus, ūs, m. *shot, blow.*
Id., see **Idus.**
idcircō, adv. *on that account.*
īdem, eădem, ĭdem, *same*; idem qui, idem atque—*the same as.*
ĭdentĭdem, adv. *repeatedly.*
ĭdōneus, a, um, *suitable, serviceable, capable, qualified.*
Īdūs, ŭum, *the Ides.*
ignis, is, m. *fire, watch-fire, fire-signal.*
ignōbĭlis, e, *obscure.*

ignōmĭnia, ae, f. *disgrace.*
ignōro (1), tr. *not know*; pass. *am unnoticed.*
ignosco, nōvi, nōtum (3), intr. c. dat. *pardon, grant an amnesty, overlook.*
ille, illa, illud, *that*; *he, she, it, they.*
illīc, adv. *there, in that place.*
illo, adv. *thither, to that point.*
imbēcillĭtās, ātis, f. *weakness, lack of resolution.*
imber, bris, m. *rain, rain-storm*; plur. *stormy weather.*
ĭmĭtor (1), tr. *imitate, copy.*
immānis, e, *vast, enormous.*
immĭneo (2), intr. *menace, threaten.*
im-mitto, mīsi, missum (3), tr. *let in, launch* (javelins); i. in flumen—*lower into the river.*
immŏlo (1), tr. *sacrifice.*
immortālis, e, *immortal.*
immūnis, e, *free from taxes.*
immūnĭtās, ātis, f.; i. omnium rerum—*freedom from all burdens.*
impărātus, a, um, *unprepared.*
impĕdīmentum, i, n. *hindrance*; plur. *baggage, baggage cattle, stock and baggage*; prima impedimenta—*the head of the baggage train.*
impĕdio (4), tr. *hamper, impede, interfere with, check, stop*; i. locum—*make a place impassable*; i. animum—*distract attention*; impeditus, *encumbered, difficult, impenetrable*; nihil victoribus impeditum — *nothing to stop the victors.*
im-pello, pŭli, pulsum (3), tr. *stimulate*; impulsus, *carried away.*
im-pendeo (2), intr. *overhang.*
impensus, a, um, *untold*; impenso pretio—*at great cost.*
impĕrātor, ōris, m. *general, commander-in-chief.*
impĕrītus, a, um, *inexperienced*; i. rerum—*ignorant of the world.*
impĕrium, i, n. *command, dominion, sovereignty, direction* (*government* ii. 3. 5); plur. *orders, tyranny, discipline*; summa imperii—*chief command*; cum imperio—*vested with the command of an army.*
impĕro (1), tr. and intr. *command, rule, am general, exercise authority*; i. milites—*order troops to be raised*; i. naves, obsides—*requisition ships, hostages*; imperata facio—*obey orders.*
impĕtro (1), tr. *gain one's request, attain one's object*; *get consent*; pass. *am agreed to.*
impĕtus, ūs, m. *attack, onset, rush, fury*; i. gladiorum—*impact of swords.*
impius, a, um, *impious.*
im-plĭco, āvi, ātum, or ui, ĭtum, āre, tr. *interlace.*
im-plōro (1), tr. *solicit, beseech.*
im-pōno, pŏsui, pŏsĭtum (3), tr. *place, impose*; c. dat. *impose on, exact from.*
im-porto (1), tr. *import.*
impŏsĭtus, see **impono.**
imprŏbus, a, um, *violent, reckless.*
imprōvīsus, a, um, *unforeseen*; improviso, de improviso—*unexpectedly.*
imprūdens, ntis, *off one's guard.*
imprūdentia, ae, f. *ignorance, short-sightedness.*
impūbēs, ĕris, *chaste.*
im-pugno (1), tr. and intr. *attack.*
impulsus, see **impello.**
impulsus, ūs, m. *prompting.*
impūnĕ, adv. *with impunity.*
impūnĭtās, ātis, f. *impunity.*

īmus, a, um, *lowest, bottom.*
ĭn, prep. c. acc. *to, towards, into, against*; in omnes partes —*in all directions*; in altitudinem, longitudinem —*in depth, length*; potestas in aliquem—*power over a person*; consulta in eos facta—*decrees passed in their favour*; in reliquum tempus —*for the future*; in dies — *day after day*; in singulos annos — *annually*; in singula diei tempora —*hour by hour*; c. abl. *in, on, among*; in primis—*first of all, especially*; in eo—*in his case*; in tanto imperio—*considering the great power*; in quaerendo—*in the course of inquiry*; in armis—*under arms*; in ancoris—*at anchor*; in flumine pons—*a bridge over a river*; in iaculo inligatus—*tied to a javelin.*
ĭnānis, e, *empty, idle.*
incautē, adv. *incautiously.*
incautus, a, um, *off one's guard.*
incendium, i, n. *fire, burning.*
incendo, di, sum (3), tr. *set fire to*; i. aliquem — *inflame a person's passions.*
incertus, a, um, *vague, ill-defined*; i. iter—*track*; incertis temporibus — *at odd times*; incertis ordinibus — *with ranks not properly formed.*
incĭdo, cĭdi (3), intr. *fall on, fall to*; i. in (c. acc.)—*fall in with, come upon, occur.*
incīdo, cīdi, cīsum (3), tr. *cut into.*
incĭpio, cēpi, ceptum (3), tr. *begin.*
-**incĭto** (1), tr. *urge on*; reflex. *rush in, on*; i. remis—*row hard*; i. cursum—*quicken pace*; incitatus, *at full gallop, exasperated.*
incognĭtus, a, um, *unknown.*
in-cŏlo, cŏlui, cultum (3), tr. and intr. *inhabit, dwell.*
incŏlŭmis, e, *safe, unhurt, safe and sound.*
incommŏdē, adv. *disastrously.*
incommŏdum, i, n. *disaster, loss.*
incrēdĭbĭlis, e, *incredible.*
incrĕpĭto (1), tr. *rail at*; i. vocibus — *make abusive remarks.*
in-cumbo, cŭbui, cŭbĭtum (3), intr. *lean on*; i. in bellum—*devote oneself to the war.*
incursio, ōnis, f. *raid.*
incursus, ūs, m. *onset.*
incūso (1), tr. *accuse, rate, censure.*
indĕ, adv. *thence, then.*
indĭcium, i, n. *information*; per indicium—*by means of informers.*
in-dīco, xi, ctum (3), tr. *appoint, fix, convene.*
indictus, a, um, *unsaid*; indictā causā—*without trial.*
indignissimē, superl. adv. *undeservedly*; i. pereo—*am most foully murdered.*
indignĭtās, ātis, f. *ill-usage, humiliation.*
indignor (1), intr. *am indignant.*
indignus, a, um, c. abl. *unworthy of.*
indīligens, ntis, *careless.*
indīligentia, ae, f. *slackness.*
indīligentius, compar. adv. *less carefully.*
in-dūco, xi, ctum (3), tr. *draw on, induce*; i. scuta pellibus —*cover shields with skins*; inductus, *impelled.*
indulgentia, ae, f. *favour.*

indulgeo, si, tum (2), intr. c. dat. *favour.*
induo, dui, dūtum (3), tr. *put on*; i. me vallis—*impale myself on, tread on, stakes.*
industriē, adv. *actively.*
indūtiae, ārum, f. *armistice.*
in-eo, ii, itum, īre, tr. *enter, begin*; i. consilium—*form a plan*; i. numerum—*number*; i. gratiam—*win favour*; initā aestate—*at the beginning of summer.*
inermis, e, *unarmed.*
iners, rtis, *lazy, unmanly.*
infāmia, ae, f. *disgrace.*
infectus, a, um, *not done*; re infectā—*unsuccessful.*
infĕrior, ius, compar. adj. *lower, inferior.*
in-fĕro, tŭli, lātum, ferre, tr. *import*; i. bellum (c. dat.)—*attack*; i. signa—*advance*; i. calamitatem—*bring disaster*; i. vulnera—*inflict wounds*; i. iniurias (c. dat.)—*molest*; i. causas—*allege reasons*; i. spem—*inspire hope*; i. periculum (c. dat.)—*expose to danger*; i. ignem (c. dat.)—*set fire to*; i. aliquem in equum—*mount a person.*
infestus, a, um, *hostile*; infestis signis eo, consisto—*advance to the attack, show a bold front.*
inficio, fēci, fectum (3), tr. *stain.*
infidēlis, e, *disaffected.*
in-fīgo, xi, xum (3), tr. *fasten in.*
infimus, a, um, *lowest, bottom*; i. collis—*foot of the hill.*
infīnitus, a, um, *immense.*
infirmitās, ātis, f. *instability, weakness.*
infirmus, a, um, *weak, weakened, unsound*; infirmo animo—*dispirited.*

in-flecto, xui, xum (3), tr. *bend over*; reflex. *bend.*
in-fluo, xi, xum (3), intr. *overflow, discharge, drain* (into something).
in-fŏdio, fōdi, fossum (3), tr. *bury.*
infrā, adv. and prep. c. acc. *below, under, inferior to.*
ingens, ntis, *large, immense.*
ingrātus, a, um, *unpleasing.*
ingrĕdior, gressus (3), intr. *go in, invade, penetrate.*
inicio, iēci, iectum (3), tr. *lay on, inspire.*
inimīcitia, ae, f. *feud.*
inimīcus, a, um, *hostile*; subst. *enemy, opponent.*
inīquitās, ātis, f. *unevenness, injustice, unreasonableness, disparity*; i. rerum—*adverse conditions.*
inīquus, a, um, *uneven, unfavourable, unfair, unjust.*
initium, i, n. *beginning, outskirts.*
in-iungo, nxi, nctum (3), tr. *fasten on, impose on.*
iniūria, ae, f. *outrage, wrongdoing*; abl. *wrongfully, wantonly.*
iniussū, abl. *without orders.*
in-līgātus, a, um, *fastened.*
inlustris, e, *noble, notable, distinguished.*
in-nascor, nātus sum (3), intr. *arise in*; alacritas innata est—*ardour took possession of them*; temeritas innata est—*rashness is innate.*
in-nītor, nixus sum (3), intr. c. dat. *lean on.*
innŏcens, ntis, *innocent.*
innŏcentia, ae, f. *integrity.*
inŏpia, ae, f. *want, lack, scarcity.*
inŏpinans, ntis, *surprised, not expecting.*
in-rīdeo, si, sum (2), intr. *jeer.*

inrīdĭcŭlē, adv. *unwittily*; non i.—*wittily enough.*
in-rumpo, rūpi, ruptum (3), intr. *dash in*, *break in.*
inruptio, ōnis, f. *raid.*
insciens, ntis, *not knowing.*
inscientia, ae, f. *ignorance, inexperience.*
inscius, a, um, *unaware.*
in-sĕquor, sĕcūtus sum (3), tr. *pursue closely, follow up.*
in-sĕro, sĕrui, sertum (3), tr. *insert.*
insidiae, ārum, f. *ambuscade, ambush, trap, treachery.*
insignis, e, *signal, striking*; subst. insigne, n. *signal*; plur. *crests, devices.*
insĭlio, sĭlui, sultum (4), intr. *leap, spring.*
in-sĭmŭlo (1), tr. *accuse.*
in-sĭnuo (1), tr. *insinuate*; reflex. *penetrate.*
in-sisto, stĭti (3), tr. and intr. *stand, take one's stand*; totus et mente et animo insistit—*devotes himself heart and soul*; i. rationem pugnae — *adopt tactics.*
insŏlenter, adv. *insolently.*
in-specto (1), intr. *look on.*
instābĭlis, e, *unsteady, uncertain.*
instăr, indecl. n. *after the manner of*; i. muri—*like a wall.*
instīgo (1), tr. *stimulate.*
instĭtuo, ui, ūtum (3), tr. *arrange, prepare, build, erect, commence, proceed, train, instruct*; i. rationem — *adopt, establish a principle*; i. exemplum—*create a precedent*; i. remiges—*raise rowers*; ut instituerat—*as usual.*
instĭtūtum, i, n. *custom, institution, regular practice.*
in-sto, stĭti (1), intr. *press forward*; instat dies—*the day is near*; instans, *impending.*
instrūmentum, i, n. *equipment.*
in-struo, xi, ctum (3), tr. *form, draw up, equip, build* (ships).
insuēfactus, a, um, *accustomed, well trained.*
insuētus, a, um, c. gen. *unaccustomed to.*
insŭla, ae, f. *island.*
insŭper, prep. and adv. *above, on top.*
intĕger, gra, grum, *fresh, vigorous, uninjured*; re integrā—*before the event.*
in-tĕgo, xi, ctum (3), tr. *cover over.*
intel-lĕgo, xi, ctum (3), *learn, know, see, perceive.*
in-tentus, a, um, pf. partic. of intendo, *earnestly fixed, intent.*
intĕr, prep. c. acc. *between, among, during*; inter se dant—*they exchange.*
inter-cēdo, cessi, cessum (3), intr. *pass between, intervene, elapse*; i. alicui cum aliquo—*exist between.*
intercĭpio, cēpi, ceptum (3), tr. *cut off, intercept, pick up.*
interclūdo, si, sum (3), tr. *cut off, block.*
inter-dīco, xi, ctum (3), tr. *forbid, exclude*; i. sacrificiis—*excommunicate.*
interdiu, adv. *by day.*
interdum, adv. *at times, for a time.*
intĕrĕā, adv. *meanwhile.*
intĕreo, ii, ĭtum, īre, intr. *perish.*
intĕrest, c. gen. *it is important to.*
interfĭcio, fēci, fectum (3), tr. *kill, put to death.*
interĭcio, iēci, iectum (3), tr. *place between, scatter, intersperse*; pass. *intervene*; brevi spatio interiecto—*after a brief*

interval; interiectus, *lying between.*
intĕrim, adv. *meanwhile.*
intĕrior, ius, compar. adj. *interior, inside.*
intĕrĭtus, ūs, m. *death, fate.*
inter-mitto, mīsi, missum (3), tr. and intr. *let pass, discontinue, interrupt, stop, leave a gap* or *gaps*; vento intermisso —*the wind having dropped*; spatio mille passuum intermisso—*within a mile*; intermissa pars, *unenclosed part.*
internĕcio, ōnis, f. *annihilation.*
interpello (1), tr. *obstruct.*
inter-pōno, pŏsui, pŏsĭtum (3), *interpose, put forward*; i. moram—*gain time*; tridui mora interposita—*after a delay of three days*; i. fidem—*pledge one's word, appeal to pledges.*
interprĕs, ĕtis, m. *interpreter.*
interprĕtor (1), tr. *expound.*
inter-rŏgo (1), tr. *question.*
inter-rumpo, rūpi, ruptum (3), tr. *break down.*
inter-scindo, scĭdi, scissum (3), tr. *break down, tear apart.*
inter-sum, fui, esse, intr. *am present, between, engaged in*; interest—*there is an interval* (see also **interest**).
intervallum, i, n. *interval.*
inter-vĕnio, vēni, ventum (4), intr. *come upon the scene.*
interventus, ūs, m. *intervention*; noctis interventu—*under cover of darkness.*
in-texo, xui, xtum (3), tr. *interweave.*
intŏlĕrantius, compar. adv. *relentlessly.*
intrā, prep. c. acc. *within, inside*; i. annum vicensimum—*before the twentieth year.*
intrītus, a, um, *not tired.*
intro (1), tr. *enter.*
intrō-dūco, xi, ctum (3), tr. *lead in.*
intrŏ-eo, ii, ĭtum, īre, intr. *come on.*
intrŏĭtus, ūs, m. *entrance.*
intrō-mitto, mīsi, missum (3), tr. *send inside.*
introrsus, adv. *inwards, on the inner side, into the heart of the country* vi. 10. 5.
intrō-rumpo, rūpi, ruptum (3), intr. *break in.*
in-tueor, tuĭtus sum (2), tr. *gaze on.*
intŭli, see **infero.**
intus, adv. *within, in the camp* v. 45. 2.
inūsĭtātus, a, um, *unwonted, unfamiliar.*
inūtĭlis, e, *useless, unfavourable.*
in-vĕnio, vēni, ventum (4), tr. *find, learn.*
inventor, ōris, m. *inventor.*
in-vĕtĕrasco, āvi (3), intr. *settle, become established.*
invictus, a, um, *invincible.*
in-vĭdeo, vīdi, vīsum (2), intr. c. dat. *am jealous of.*
invĭdia, ae, f. *envy.*
invĭŏlātus, a, um, *inviolable.*
invīto (1), tr. *lure on.*
invītus, a, um, *unwilling*; Balbo invito—*against Balbus' will.*
ipsĕ, a, um, *oneself, self, very, in person.*
īrācundia, ae, f. *hasty temper.*
īrācundus, a, um, *ferocious, passionate.*
ĭs, ĕă, ĭd, *that, this, such, these, those*; *he, she, it, they*; non is sum qui terrear—*I am not the man to be frightened.*
istĕ, a, ŭd, *that, that of yours.*
ĭtă, adv. *so, thus, as follows*; non ita magnus—*not very great.*
ĭtăquĕ, adv. *and so, accordingly.*

ĭtem, adv. *likewise, besides.*
ĭter, ĭtĭnĕris, n. *journey, march, route, road*; i. facio—*march*; i. do—*allow to march*; magnis, minoribus itineribus—*by forced marches, by easy stages*; quam maximis potest itineribus—*as fast as one can possibly travel*; itinerum causā—*to open up the routes*; labore atque itinere—*by hard marching.*
ĭtĕrum, adv. *a second time*; semel atque iterum — *repeatedly.*
iŭba, ae, f. *mane.*
iŭbeo, iussi, iussum (2), tr. *order, direct.*
iūdĭcium, i, n. *trial, judgement, decision*; i. optimum facio de —*express a high opinion of*; iudicio, *deliberately.*
iūdĭco (1), tr. *judge, decide, declare, deem, suppose*; iudicari debet—*we must agree.*
iŭgum, i, n. *yoke, ridge, summit.*
iūmentum, i, n. *draught cattle, horse, ox.*
iunctūra, ae, f. *joint, union.*
iungo, nxi, nctum (3), tr. *join, unite, bind, lash together.*
iūniōres, um, *men of military age.*
iūro (1), intr. *swear.*
iūs, iūris, n. *rights, rightful sphere*; i. iurandum—*oath*; i. habeo in aliquem—*have power over a person.*
iussū, abl. *by order.*
iustĭtia, ae, f. *justice, equity.*
iustus, a, um, *just, regular, proper*; i. causa—*a cogent reason.*
iŭventūs, tūtis, f. *fighting men.*
iŭvo, iūvi, iūtum, āre, tr. *help*; i. frumento — *supply with corn.*
iuxtā, adv. *near by.*

Kal. = **Kălendae**, arum, f. *the Kalends*; first day of the month.

L. = (1) *fifty*; (2) *Lucius.*
lābor, lapsus sum (3), intr. *fall away, revolt*; l. spe—*am disappointed.*
lăbor, ōris, m. *trouble, toil, hardships*; summi laboris sum—*am capable of great endurance.*
lăbōro (1), intr. *strive, am hard pressed*; l. animo — *exercise one's ingenuity.*
lăbrum, i, n. *lip, rim, upper edge* (of trench).
lāc, lactis, n. *milk.*
lăcesso, īvi, ītum (3), tr. *harass, provoke*; l. proelio—*challenge.*
lacrĭma, ae, f. *tear.*
lacrĭmo (1), intr. *burst into tears.*
lăcus, ūs, m. *lake.*
laedo, si, sum (3), tr. *hurt*; l. fidem—*break faith.*
laetĭtia, ae, f. *exultation.*
laetus, a, um, *exultant.*
languĭdē, adv. *listlessly.*
languĭdus, a, um, *feeble.*
languor, ōris, m. *exhaustion.*
lăpis, ĭdis, m. *stone.*
lăqueus, i, m. *noose.*
largior (4), tr. *bestow, supply generously, bribe.*
largĭter, adv. *largely*; l. possum —*have great influence.*
largītio, ōnis, f. *bribery.*
lassĭtūdo, ĭnis, f. *weariness.*
lātē, adv. *widely*; longe lateque—*far and wide*; compar. lātius, *farther, too far.*
lătĕbra, ae, f. *lair, hiding-place.*
lăteo, ui (2), intr. *lurk, escape notice.*
lātĭtūdo, ĭnis, f. *width, breadth*; in latitudinem—*sideways.*
lătro, ōnis, m. *brigand.*

lătrōcĭnium, i, n. *robbery*; plur. *predatory expeditions.*
lātus, a, um, *broad, extensive.*
lătus, ĕris, n. *side, flank.*
laudo (1), tr. *praise, commend.*
laus, dis, f. *renown, distinction, credit*; summā cum laude—*covered with glory.*
lăvo, lāvi, lăvātum, lautum or lōtum (1), tr. *bathe*; pass. in intransitive sense.
laxo (1), tr. *open out.*
lēgātio, ōnis, f. *mission, embassy.*
lēgātus, i, m. (1) *envoy*, (2) *general, officer*; l. pro praetore—*second in command.*
lĕgio, ōnis, f. *legion*; plur. *the infantry.*
lĕgĭōnārius, a, um, *legionary, regular.*
lēnis, e, *gentle, light* (of a wind).
lēnĭtās, ātis, f. *gentleness, sluggishness* (of a stream).
lēnĭter, adv. *gently*; lenius (compar.), *less vigorously.*
lĕpŭs, ŏris, m. *hare.*
lĕvis, e, *light, puerile, idle* (of a rumour).
lĕvĭtās, ātis, f. *lightness, fickleness.*
lĕvo (1), tr., c. abl. or ab, *relieve of, free from.*
lex, lēgis, f. *law.*
lĭbenter, adv. *readily, willingly.*
lībĕr, ĕra, ĕrum, *free, undisturbed.*
lībĕrālĭtās, ātis, f. *generosity.*
lībĕrālĭter, adv. *graciously.*
lībĕrē, adv. *boldly, unreservedly.*
lībĕri, ōrum, m. *children.*
lībĕro (1), tr. *release, set free.*
lībertās, ātis, f. *liberty, freedom.*
lībrīlis, e, *weighing a pound*; funda l.—*a sling throwing large stones.*
lĭcentia, ae, f. *contempt for discipline.*
lĭceor, lĭcĭtus sum (2), intr. *bid* (at an auction).
lĭcet, lĭcuĭt and lĭcĭtum est, *it is permitted*; c. dat. *one may.*
lignātio, ōnis, f. *fetching wood.*
lignātor, ōris, f. *wood-cutter.*
līlium, i, n. *lily* vii. 73. 8.
līnea, ae, f. *line.*
lingua, ae, f. *tongue, language.*
lingŭla, ae, f. *spit, tongue of land.*
linter, tris, f. *small boat.*
līnum, i, n. *flax.*
līs, lītis, f. *matter in dispute.*
littĕra, ae, f. *letter* (of the alphabet); plur. *characters, dispatch*; l. publicae—*state papers.*
lītus, ŏris, n. *shore.*
lŏcus, i, m. (plur. loca), *place, locality, land, ground, position, post, room, stage of the narrative* vi. 11. 1; l. est (c. dat.)—*there is an opening for*; locum relinquo (c. dat.)—*leave an opening for*; in eum locum ventum est—*it came to this*; de loco contendo—*struggle for promotion*; civium, obsidum (&c.) loco—*as citizens, hostages, &c.*
lŏcūtus, see **loquor.**
longē, adv. *far, by far*; longius (compar.), *too far, farther, longer*; quam longissime—*as far as possible.*
longinquus, a, um, *distant, long, lasting.*
longĭtūdo, ĭnis, f. *length.*
longŭrius, i, m. *long pole, pike.*
longus, a, um, *long*; longum est—*it would be a waste of time*; navis longa—*warship*; longior dies—*a later date.*
lŏquor, lŏcūtus sum (3), tr. and intr. *speak, talk.*
lōrīca, ae, f. *breastwork.*

lūna, ae, f. *moon.*
lux, lūcis, f. *light, dawn.*

M. = (1) *a thousand*; (2) *Marcus.*
māceria, ae, f. *wall of loose stones.*
māchinātio, ōnis, f. *machine, float.*
maestus, a, um, *sad.*
măgis, adv. *more, rather*; maximē (superl.), *especially, most.*
măgistrātus, ūs, m. *office, magistrate.*
magnificus, a, um, *splendid.*
magnitūdo, inis, f. *greatness, size, magnitude, force*; m. animi—*heroism.*
magnŏpĕre, adv. *greatly, entirely, earnestly.* (See also tribuo.)
magnus, a, um (compar. māior, superl. maximus), *great, large, important, loud* (of a voice); magni habeo—*value highly*; maior (natu), *older*; maiores, *forefathers.*
māiestās, ātis, f. *majesty.*
māior, see **magnus.**
mălăcia, ae, f. *stillness, calm.*
mălĕ, adv. *badly*; m. rem gero—*bungle things*; compar. pēius.
mălĕficium, i, n. *mischief, doing harm.*
mālo, mālui, malle, intr. *prefer.*
mālus, i, m. *pole, upright, mast.*
mandātum, i, n. *message, instructions.*
mando (1), tr. *instruct, authorize, entrust*; m. litteris—*commit to writing*; m. me fugae—*take to flight.*
mānĕ, adv. *in the morning.*
măneo, nsi, nsum (2), intr. *remain*; in eo m. quod convēnit—*abide by one's agreement.*
mănipŭlāris, is, m. *comrade*; one of the same company.
mănipŭlus, i, m. *maniple, company.*
mansuēfăcio, fēci, factum (3), tr. *tame*; pass. mansuefieri.
mansuētūdo, inis, f. *humanity.*
mănus, ūs, f. (1) *hand*; manūs do—*give in*; in manibus nostris—*right upon us*; manu—*artificially*; (2) *band, body, horde, forces.*
mărĕ, is, n. *sea*; m. nostrum—*the Mediterranean.*
mărĭtimus, a, um, *belonging to the sea*; maritimae res—*seamanship*; m. ora—*sea-coast.*
mās, măris, *male.*
mătăra, ae, f. *dart.*
māter, tris, f. *mother*; m. familiae—*matron*; soror ex matre—*sister on the mother's side.*
mātĕria, ae, f. *timber.*
mātĕrior (1), intr. *fetch timber.*
mātrĭmōnium, i, n. *marriage.*
mātūrē, adv. *early*; quam maturrime—*at the earliest possible moment.*
mātūro (1), intr. *hasten, act at once.*
mātūrus, a, um, *ripe.*
maximē, see **magis.**
maximus, see **magnus.**
mĕdeor (2), c. dat. *remedy.*
mĕdiŏcris, e, *ordinary, moderate*; non m.—*great.*
mĕdiŏcriter, adv. *moderately*; non m.—*completely.*
mĕditerrāneus, a, um, *inland.*
mĕdius, a, um, *in the middle*; m. utrisque—*between the two*; in colle medio—*half-way up the hill*; media acies—*the centre.*
mĕlior, us, compar. adj. *better.*
membrum, i, n. *limb.*

mĕmĭni, isse, tr. *remember.*
mĕmŏria, ae, f. *memory, remembrance*; memoriā teneo—*remember*; memoriā prodendus—*worthy of mention*; supra hanc memoriam—*before our time*; memoriā patrum—*in our fathers' time*; memoriā hominum—*within the memory of man.*
mendācium, i, n. *lying tale.*
mens, ntis, f. *judgement, temper, character, mind.*
mensis, is, m. *month.*
mensūra, ae, f. *measurement.*
mentio, ōnis, f. *mention.*
mercātor, ōris, m. *trader.*
mercātūra, ae, f. *commerce.*
mercēs, ēdis, f. *hire.*
mĕreo, mĕreor (2), tr. *earn, incur*; bene m. de—*deserve well of*; ita meritus sum de Gaio ut—*such have been my services to Gaius that*; bene meritus—*deserving.*
mĕrīdiēs, ēi, f. *midday, south.*
mĕrĭtum, i, n. *deserts, services*; merito Balbi accidit—*Balbus deserved that it should happen.*
mētior, mensus sum (4), tr. *measure out, distribute.*
mĕto, messui, messum (3), tr. *reap.*
mĕtus, ūs, m. *fear*; hic m.—*fear of this.*
meus, a, um, *my, mine.*
mīlĕs, ĭtis, m. *soldier, troop.*
mīlĭtāris, e, *military*; rei militaris peritissimus—*a thorough soldier.*
mīlĭtia, ae, f. *military service.*
millĕ, indecl. adj. *a thousand*; plur. decl. subst. *thousands*; mille (sc. passuum)—*mile.*
mĭnĭmē, adv. *least, by no means.*
mĭnĭmus, a, um, *least, shortest* (of time).
mĭnor, us, compar. adj. *smaller, less.*
mĭnuo, ui, ūtum (3), tr. and intr. *weaken, humble, impair, prevent, settle* (a dispute), *ebb* (of tide).
mĭnus, adv. *less, not.*
mīror (1), tr. and intr. *am surprised, astonished, wonder at.*
mīrus, a, um, *strange*; mirum mihi videtur—*I am at a loss to understand*; mirum in modum—*wonderfully.*
mĭsĕr, ĕra, ĕrum, *wretched, pitiable, unfortunate.*
mĭsĕrĭcordia, ae, f. *mercy, compassion*; m. vulgi—*the general sympathy.*
mĭsĕror (1), tr. *bewail, deplore, talk dolefully of.*
missū, abl. *by the sending*; m. Caesaris—*sent by Caesar.*
mītissĭmē, superl. adv. *very gently.*
mitto, mīsi, missum (3), *throw, send.*
mōbĭlis, e, *changeable, fickle.*
mōbĭlitās, ātis, f. *instability, mobility.*
mōbĭlĭter, adv. *easily, readily.*
mŏdĕror (1), tr. *check, control.*
mŏdestia, ae, f. *obedience.*
mŏdŏ, adv. *merely, even, lately*; non m.—*not only*; tantum m.—*only*; modo conscripti—*raw recruits.*
mŏdus, i, m. *manner, kind, limit, size*; mirum in modum—*marvellously*; quem ad modum—*as, how*; huius, eius modi—*of this, that sort*; *such.*
moenia, ium, n. *walls, ramparts.*
mōlēs, is, f. *dam.*
mŏlestē, adv. *with trouble*; m. fero—*am irritated at.*
mōlīmentum, i, n. *labour.*
mŏlītus, a, um, pf. partic. of

molo, *ground*; m. cibaria—*flour.*
mollio (4), tr. *make less hard*; m. clivum—*ease the slope.*
mollis, e, *soft, irresolute, gently sloping* (but see note on v. 9. 1).
mollĭtia, ae, f. *softness*; m. animi—*infirmity of purpose.*
mōmentum, i, n. *influence, importance*; levi momento aestimo—*treat as insignificant*; magnum momentum habet—*tells heavily.*
mŏneo, ui, ĭtum (2), tr. *warn, advise.*
mons, ntis, m. *mountain, hill.*
mŏra, ae, f. *delay.*
morbus, i, m. *illness.*
mŏrior, mortuus sum, mŏri, intr. *die.*
mŏror (1), tr. and intr. *halt, stand one's ground, hinder, hamper, block.*
mors, rtis, f. *death.*
mortuus, see **morior.**
mōs, mōris, m. *custom*; more maiorum—*in the good old (Roman) fashion.*
mōtus, ūs, m. *motion, movement, disturbance*; navium motus ad usum expeditior erat—*the ships were easier to handle.*
mŏveo, mōvi, mōtum (2), tr. *move*; m. castra—*strike camp.*
mŭlier, ĕris, f. *woman, wife.*
mūlio, ōnis, m. *mule-driver.*
multĭtūdo, ĭnis, f. *multitude, numbers, rabble*; m. telorum—*shower of darts*; m. hominum—*population.*
multo (1), tr. *fine*; multati agris—*having their lands confiscated.*
multum, subst. and adv. *much, a great part*; multo, adv. *much, far.*
multus, a, um, *much, many*; multā nocte—*late at night*; multo die—*late in the day.*
mūlus, i, m. *mule.*
mundus, i, m. *universe.*
mūnīmentum, i, n. *barrier, protection.*
mūnio (4), tr. *fortify, protect, defend, entrench*; m. iter—*raise a causeway*; naturā munitus—*naturally strong.*
mūnītio, ōnis, f. *entrenchments, entrenching.*
mūnus, ĕris, n. *duty, present.*
mūrālis, e, *mural*; m. falx—*grappling-hook*; m. pilum—*heavy pike.*
mūrus, i, m. *wall, rampart.*
muscŭlus, i, m. *sappers' hut.*
mŭtĭlus, a, um, *blunt.*

nactus, see **nanciscor.**
nam, conj. *for.*
namquĕ, conj. *for indeed, for.*
nanciscor, nactus sum (3), tr. *get, obtain, occupy, take advantage of*; n. spatium—*gain time.*
nascor, nātus sum (3), intr. *am born, am native*; (plumbum) nascitur—*is found*; *rise* (of a hill); natus a—*due to*; natus bello—*a born warrior.*
nātālis, e, *natal*; n. dies—*birthday.*
nātio, ōnis, f. *nation, tribe.*
nātīvus, a, um, *natural.*
nātūra, ae, f. *nature, character*; n. loci—*local conditions, lie of the ground*; n. rerum—*origin of all things, principles of construction.*
nātū, abl. *by birth*; n. maior—*older.*
nātus, see **nascor.**
nauta, ae, m. *sailor, boatman.*
nautĭcus, a, um, *nautical*; n. res—*seamanship.*

nāvālis, e, *naval*.
nāvĭcŭla, ae, f. *skiff*.
nāvĭgātio, ōnis, f. *navigation, voyage, trip*.
nāvĭgium, i, n. *galley*.
nāvĭgo (1), intr. *navigate, sail*.
nāvis, is, f. *ship, boat, barge, hull*; n. longa—*man-of-war*; n. oneraria—*transport*.
nāvo (1), tr. *perform with zeal*; n. operam—*do one's utmost*.
nē, conj. *lest, that not*; adv. ne . . . quidem, *not even* (see note on v. 44. 5).
-nĕ, enclitic, interrogative particle.
nĕc, see neque.
nĕcessārius, a, um, *necessary, urgent, indispensable*; n. tempus—*critical time*; necessario, *perforce, of course*; subst. *a friend*.
nĕcessĕ, indecl. adj. *necessary*.
nĕcessĭtās, ātis, f. *necessity, exigencies*.
nĕcessĭtūdo, ĭnis, *intimacy*.
necnĕ, conj. *or not*.
nĕco (1), *put to death*.
nēcŭbi, conj. *lest anywhere*.
nĕfārius, a, um, *atrocious, shameful*.
nĕfās, indecl. n. *shame*.
neglĕgo, lexi, lectum (3), tr. *neglect, disregard, overlook, leave unavenged* or *unpunished*.
nĕgo (1), tr. *deny, say . . . not, refuse*.
nĕgōtior (1), intr. *trade, do business*.
nĕgōtium, i, n. *business, undertaking, trouble*; n. do (c. dat.)—*charge, commission*; n. bene gero—*make a successful stroke*; in ipso negotio—*on the spur of the moment*.
nēmo (nēmĭnis), *no one*.
nĕquĕ, **nĕc**, conj. *nor, and not*; neque . . . neque, *neither . . . nor*; neque enim—*for indeed . . . not*.
nēquīquam, adv. *in vain, for nothing*.
nervus, i, m. *sinew*; plur. *strength, vigour*.
neu, **nēve**, conj. = et ne.
neuter, tra, trum, *neither*.
nex, nĕcis, f. *death, execution*.
nĭhĭl, indecl. n. *nothing, not*; non nihil—*somewhat*.
nĭhĭlo, abl. *none* (adv.); n. minus, magis—*none the less, more*.
nĭmĭs, adv. *too*; non nimis firmum praesidium—*an inadequate force*.
nĭmius, a, um, *undue, excessive*.
nĭsi, conj. *unless, except, if not*.
nītor, nīsus and nixus sum (3), intr. *strive*; c. abl. *rely on*.
nix, nĭvis, f. *snow*.
nōbĭlis, e, *noble, of high rank, illustrious*.
nōbĭlĭtās, ātis, f. *men of high rank, nobles*.
nŏcens, ntis, *guilty*.
nŏceo, ui, ĭtum (2), intr. c. dat. *hurt, injure, molest*.
noctū, adv. *by night*.
nocturnus, a, um, *in the night*.
nōdus, i, m. *knot*.
nōlo, nōlui, nolle, intr. *am unwilling, object, refuse*.
nōmen, ĭnis, n. *name, title, prestige*; suo nomine—*on one's own account, personally*; nomine dotis, obsidum, praedae—*as dowry, hostages, plunder*.
nōmĭnātim, adv. *with names, individually, expressly*.
nōmĭno (1), tr. *name, call*.
nōn, adv. *not*.
nōnāgintā, *ninety*.
nondum, adv. *not yet*.
nongenti, ae, a, *nine hundred*.
nōnus, a, um, *ninth*.

nōs, nosmet, *we.*
nosco, nōvi, nōtum (3), *come to know, recognize*; perf. *know.*
noster, tra, trum, *our, ours*; nostri—*our men, Romans.*
nōtĭtia, ae, f. *knowledge, intercourse.*
nōtus, a, um, *known, well-known.*
nŏvem, num. adj. *nine.*
nŏvĭtās, ātis, f. *novelty, strangeness.*
nŏvus, a, um, *new, fresh, recent, unexpected, strange*; novae res—*revolution*; nova imperia—*a change of masters*; **nŏvissĭmus,** *last*; n. agmen—*rear guard*; novissimi, *rear ranks.*
nox, noctis, f. *night.*
noxia, ae, f. *crime.*
nūbo, nupsi, nuptum (3), intr. c. dat. *marry* (a husband).
nūdo (1), tr. *leave bare, clear*; pass. *am exposed.*
nūdus, a, um, *bare.*
nullus, a, um, *none, no*; subst. *no one*; non n.—*some, certain, sundry.*
nŭm, interrogative particle.
nūmen, ĭnis, n. *spirit, will.*
nŭmĕrus, i, m. *number, quantity*; numero hostium habeo, duco—*treat, consider as enemies*; aliquo numero sum—*am of some account*; saepe numero—*repeatedly, many a time.*
nummus, i, m. *coin.*
numquam, adv. *never*; non n.—*sometimes, more than once.*
nunc, adv. *now.*
nuntio (1), tr. *announce, tell.*
nuntius, i, m. *messenger, news.*
nūper, adv. *lately, recently.*
nusquam, adv. *nowhere.*
nūtus, ūs, m. *nod, gesture, intimation*; ad nutum—*smartly, at the least intimation.*
ŏb, prep. c. acc. *on account of*; quam ob rem—*why.*
ŏb-aerātus, i, m. *debtor.*
ob-dūco, xi, ctum (3), tr. *draw* (a trench).
ŏb-eo, ii, ĭtum, īre, tr. *attend to.*
obĭcio, iēci, iectum (3), tr. *throw in the way, set as an obstacle, expose*; silvis obiectis—*as woods obstruct the view*; pass. *lie opposite.*
ŏbitus, ūs, m. *fate.*
oblātus, see **offero.**
oblīquē, adv. *diagonally.*
oblīquus, a, um, *slanting.*
oblīviscor, oblītus sum (3), intr. c. gen. *forget.*
obsĕcro (1), tr. *entreat.*
obsĕquentia, ae, f. *complaisance.*
ob-servo (1), tr. *watch, abide by, obey, reckon.*
obsĕs, sĭdis, m. *hostage.*
obsessio, ōnis, f. *blockade.*
obsĭdeo, sēdi, sessum (2), tr. *besiege, beset, block.*
obsĭdio, ōnis, f. *blockade, hostile pressure.*
ob-signo (1), tr. *seal.*
ob-sisto, stĭti (3), intr. c. dat. *stand against.*
obstĭnātē, adv. *steadily.*
ob-stringo, nxi, ctum (3), tr. *bind*; obstrictus, *under obligations.*
ob-struo, xi, ctum (3), tr. *block up.*
ob-tempĕro (1), intr. *submit.*
ob-testor (1), tr. *adjure*; o. deos—*pray.*
obtĭneo, tĭnui, tentum (2), tr. *occupy, hold, secure.*
obtŭli, see **offero.**
ob-vĕnio, vēni, ventum (4), intr. *fall to one's lot, attack* ii. 23. 1.
obvĭam, adv. *to meet, to attack.*
occāsio, ōnis, f. *opportunity*;

occasionis res—*a matter for a surprise.*
occāsus, ūs, m. *setting*; o. solis—*sunset, west.*
occĭdo, cĭdi (3), intr. *fall*; occidens sol—*the west.*
occīdo, cīdi, cīsum (3), tr. *kill.*
occultātio, ōnis, f. *concealment.*
occultē, adv. *secretly.*
occulto (1), tr. *hide*; pass. *escape notice.*
occultus, a, um, *secret, hidden, hard to follow* (of a track); in occulto—*in a secluded spot*; ex occulto—*from ambush.*
occŭpātio, ōnis, f. c. gen. *engaging in*; occupationes rei publicae—*reasons of state.*
occŭpo (1), tr. *seize*; occupatus, *busy, busied.*
oc-curro, curri and cŭcurri, cursum (3), intr. c. dat. *face, rush upon, run up, join, encounter, meet an attack, strike a counter blow*; occurrit ad animum mihi—*I see*; pugnantibus occurrit—*he finds them already fighting.*
Ōcĕănus, i, m. *ocean, Atlantic sea.*
octāvus, a, um, *eighth.*
octo, *eight.*
octōni, ae, a, *eight each, eight.*
ŏcŭlus, i, m. *eye.*
ōdi, ōdisse, tr. *hate.*
ŏdium, i, n. *hatred.*
of-fendo, di, sum (3), tr. *collide with*; o. animum (c. gen.)—*offend*; offendi potest—*a disaster may happen.*
offensio, ōnis, f. *offence*; sine offensione animi — *without taking offence.*
of-fĕro, obtŭli, oblātum, offerre, tr. *present, offer, confer, expose*; reflex. *ride straight at.*
officium, i, n. *loyalty, sense of duty, service*; ab officio discedo—*abandon my loyal attitude*; in officio sum, teneo—*remain staunch, keep obedient.*
ŏmitto, mīsi, missum (3), tr. *reject, ignore, put aside, drop.*
omnīno, adv. *altogether, entirely, in all*; nullus o.—*none at all.*
omnis, e, *all, every.*
ŏnĕrārius, a, um, *of burden*; o. navis—*transport.*
ŏnĕro (1), tr. *load.*
ŏnus, ĕris, n. *load, lading*; tanta onera navium — *such heavy ships.*
ŏpĕra, ae, f. *exertion, trouble, services*; operam do, navo—*do my utmost.*
ŏpīnio, ōnis, f. *fame, reputation, expectation, impression*; opinionem praebeo—*give an impression*; tanta huius belli ad barbaros o. perlata est—*the natives were so impressed by this campaign*; opinione celerius—*sooner than was expected*; praeter, contra opinionem—*unexpectedly*; opinione trium legionum deiectus—*disappointed of having three legions.*
ŏportet, uit, ēre, *it is necessary, inevitable*; c. acc. *one must, ought.*
oportūnē, adv. *opportunely.*
oportūnitās, ātis, f. *advantage, favourable position, opportunity, good luck.*
oportūnus, a, um, *suitable, convenient, advantageous.*
oppĭdānus, i, m. *townsfolk, inhabitant.*
oppĭdum, i, n. *town, stronghold.*
op-pōno, pŏsui, pŏsitum (3), tr. *post opposite*; oppositus, *in the field* vi. 36. 2.
opprĭmo, pressi, pressum (3), tr.

crush, ruin, overpower, surprise, swoop down on.
oppugnātio, ōnis, f. *attack, method of attack, siege-work.*
op-pugno (1), tr. *attack, storm, besiege.*
[ops] ŏpis, f. *aid*; plur. *resources, power.*
opto (1), tr. *wish for*; optatissimum beneficium—*the greatest service one can desire.*
ŏpus, ĕris, n. *work, works, siege-works, trenches, industries.*
ŏpus est (c. abl.), *there is need* (*of*); si quid opus facto esset—*if action were necessary.*
ōra, ae, f. *shore, coast.*
ōrātio, ōnis, f. *speech, harangue, discourse.*
ōrātor, ōris, m. *envoy.*
orbis, is, m. *circle*; o. terrarum—*the world*; orbem facio—*form square* (military).
ordo, ĭnis, m. *row, rank, century, grade, formation.*
ŏrior, ortus sum, īri, intr. *arise*; o. ab—*begin with, spring from, rise in*; oriens sol—*the east.*
ornāmentum, i, n. *distinction.*
orno (1), tr. *equip, show favour to, honour.*
ōro (1), tr. *beg, pray.*
ortus, ūs, m. *rising.*
ōs, ōris, n. *face.*
ostendo, di, tum (3), tr. *show, point out, declare, unmask* iii. 20. 4.
ostentātio, ōnis, f. *effect, display, vainglory.*
ostento (1), tr. *display, point to*; reflex. *show off.*
ōtium, i, n. *quiet.*
ōvum, i, n. *egg.*

P. = *Publius.*
pābŭlātio, ōnis, f. *foraging.*
pābŭlātor, ōris, m. *forager.*
pābŭlor (1), intr. *forage.*
pābŭlum, i, n. *forage, fodder.*
pāco (1), tr. *tranquillize, subdue*; pacatus, *friendly* vii. 50. 2.
pactum, i, n. *arrangement*; quo pacto—*how.*
paenĕ, adv. *almost, nearly.*
paenĭtet, uit, ēre, *it repents.*
pāgus, i, m. *clan.*
pălam, adv. *openly.*
palma, ae, f. *hand, palm.*
pălūs, ūdis, f. *morass.*
păluster, tris, tre, *marshy.*
pando, pandi, passum and pansum (3), tr. *spread*; passis manibus—*with hands stretched out*; passus capillus—*streaming hair.*
pār, păris, *equal*; c. dat. *a match for*; p. atque—*same as.*
părātus, a, um, pf. partic. of paro, *ready*; animo parato—*resolute.*
parcē, adv. *sparingly.*
parco, pĕperci, parsum (3), intr. c. dat. *spare.*
părens, ntis, c. *parent.*
părento (1), intr. c. dat. *avenge.*
pāreo, ui, ĭtum (2), intr. c. dat. *obey, promise obedience.*
părio, pĕpĕri, partum (3), tr. *win, gain, secure.*
păro (1), tr. *make ready, procure, muster.*
pars, rtis, f. *side, direction, district, part, division* (of troops); pars . . . pars—*some . . . others*; tres partes—*three-fourths.*
partim, adv. *in part, partly.*
partior (4), tr. *break up, divide.*
părum, adv. *too little, hardly, not.*
parvŭlus, a, um, *small, young*; parvula proelia—*skirmishes.*
parvus, a, um, *small, young*; a parvis—*from infancy.*

passim, adv. *in all directions.*
passus, ūs, *pace* (i.e. the double pace of five feet); mille passus —*a mile.*
passus, see **pando** and **patior.**
pătĕfăcio, fēci, factum (3), tr. *open up*; pass. patefīo.
păteo, ui (2), intr. *lie open, extend*; patens, *defenceless, open, unobstructed.*
păter, tris, m. *father.*
pătienter, adv. *patiently.*
pătientia, ae, f. *patience, patient endurance.*
pătior, passus sum (3), tr. *suffer, endure, permit.*
pătrius, a, um, *ancestral.*
pătrōnus, i, m. *lord, protector.*
pătruus, i, m. *father's brother.*
paucĭtās, ātis, f. *scanty numbers.*
paucus, a, um, *few.*
paulātim, adv. *little by little, insensibly.*
paulisper, adv. *for a short time.*
paulo, adv. *a little, somewhat.*
paulŭlum, adv. *a little.*
paulum, subst. and adv. *a little, somewhat.*
pax, pācis, f. *peace, forbearance*, i. 37. 2.
pecco (1), intr. *do wrong, play foul.*
pectus, ŏris, n. *breast.*
pĕcūnia, ae, f. *money.*
pĕcus, ŏris, n. *cattle, flesh-meat.*
pĕdālis, e, *measuring a foot.*
pĕdĕs, ĭtis, m. *foot-soldier, infantry.*
pĕdester, tris, tre, *on foot*; pedestres copiae—*land forces, infantry*; pedestria itinera—*land marches, routes*; p. proelia —*land fighting.*
pĕdĭtātus, ūs, m. *infantry.*
pēior, pēius, compar. adj. *worse*; peius accidit—*a worse fate befell.*
pellis, is, f. *skin*; plur. *tents.*
pello, pĕpŭli, pulsum (3), tr. *beat, beat off, repulse.*
pendo, pĕpendi, pensum (3), tr. *pay*; p. poenas—*suffer punishment.*
pĕnĕs, prep. c. acc. *in the power of.*
pĕnĭtus, adv. *far within.*
pĕr, prep. c. acc. *by means of, by, through, owing to, during, over, along*; per manus—*from hand to hand*; per fidem—*in good faith*; per me—*as far as I am concerned*; per me hoc fieri licet—*I do not oppose this, I consent*; per anni tempus potuit—*the season allowed him.*
pĕr-ăgo, ēgi, actum (3), tr. *finish, hold* (a meeting).
pĕrangustus, a, um, *very narrow.*
percipio, cēpi, ceptum (3), tr. *win, grasp, hear of, listen to*; p. usum rei militaris—*understand what fighting means.*
percontātio, ōnis, f. *inquiry.*
per-curro, curri and cŭcurri, cursum (3), tr. and intr. *run along* or *over.*
percŭtio, cussi, cussum (3), tr. *strike.*
per-disco, dĭdĭci (3), tr. *learn by heart.*
perdĭtus, a, um, pf. partic. of perdo, *desperate*; p. homo—*a desperado.*
per-dūco, xi, ctum (3), tr. *bring, bring home, win over, raise, promote, prolong, construct* (a wall); res perducitur disputatione—*the dispute dragged on.*
pĕrendĭnus, a, um, *after tomorrow.*
pĕr-eo, ii, ĭtum, īre, intr. *perish, am killed.*
pĕr-ĕquĭto (1), intr. *ride, drive*;

p. per omnes partes—*drive all over the field.*
pĕrexiguus, a, um, *very small.*
perfăcilis, e, *quite easy.*
per-fĕro, tŭli, lātum, ferre, tr. *endure, submit to, spread abroad, carry* (news), *deliver* (letters).
perfĭcio, fēci, fectum (3), tr. *finish, achieve, bring to a conclusion*; p. ut—*bring it about that.*
perfĭdia, ae, f. *treachery.*
perfringo, frēgi, fractum (3), tr. *break, break through.*
perfŭga, ae, m. *deserter.*
per-fŭgio, fūgi, fŭgĭtum (3), intr. *desert.*
perfŭgium, i, n. *place of refuge.*
pergo, perrexi, perrectum (3), intr. *go on, advance.*
pĕrīclĭtor (1), tr. and intr. *test, am endangered.*
pĕrīcŭlum, i, n. *risk, danger*; p. facio—*risk the attempt*; p. facio alicuius—*take a person's measure, test him.*
pĕrītus, a, um, c. gen. *skilled in, familiar with.*
per-lĕgo, lēgi, lectum (3), tr. *peruse.*
perlŭo, lŭi, lūtum (3), tr. *wash*; pass. *bathe.*
per-măneo, nsi, nsum (2), intr. *remain*; p. in—*hold fast to.*
per-misceo, miscui, mixtum (2), tr. *mingle.*
per-mitto, mīsi, missum (3), tr. *entrust, allow, authorize*; p. rem—*grant a request*; p. me in fidem, fidei—*place myself under the protection*; p. me potestati, c. dat.—*surrender to*; p. suffragiis—*put to the vote.*
per-mŏveo, mōvi, mōtum (2), tr. *stir up*; permotus, *influenced, swayed, overborne, anxious, alarmed.*
per-mulceo, si, sum (2), tr. *soothe.*
pernĭciēs, ēi, f. *ruin, destruction.*
perpaucus, a, um, *very few*; perpauci—*a handful of men.*
perpendĭcŭlum, i, n. *plumb-line*; ad p.—*perpendicularly.*
perpĕtior, pessus sum (3), tr. *endure.*
perpĕtuo, adv. *for ever, constantly.*
perpĕtuus, a, um, *lasting, permanent, continual, unbroken*; p. vita—*whole life*; p. trabes—*a row of balks*; in perpetuum—*for ever.*
perquīro, sīvi, sītum (3), tr. *inquire about.*
per-rumpo, rūpi, ruptum (3), tr. and intr. *break through.*
per-scrībo, psi, ptum (3), tr. *describe* (in writing).
per-sĕquor, sĕcūtus sum (3), tr. *pursue*; p. bello—*attack*; p. mortem, iniurias—*avenge the death, wrongs.*
persĕvēro (1), intr. *persist.*
per-solvo, solvi, sŏlūtum (3), tr. *pay.*
perspĭcio, spexi, spectum (3), tr. *see through, see clearly, inspect, observe, reconnoitre, realize, prove, am convinced of.*
per-sto, stĭti (1), intr. *persist.*
per-suādeo, si, sum (2), c. dat. *persuade, inculcate*; id eis persuasit—*he convinced them of this*; mihi persuasum habeo—*I am convinced.*
per-terreo, ui, ĭtum (2), tr. *frighten*; pass. *take alarm, am in a panic, demoralized.*
pertĭnācia, ae, f. *obstinacy, stubborn attitude.*
pertĭneo, ui, tentum (2), intr. *pertain, tend*; eodem pertinet—*points to the same conclusion,*

has the same object; p. ad—*pertain to, concern, reach, lead to, extend to*; res ad plures pertinet—*many are implicated.*
perturbātio, ōnis, f. *panic.*
per-turbo (1), tr. *throw into confusion, break* (ranks), *confuse, disquiet, paralyse, unnerve.*
per-văgor (1), intr. *rove about, scour the country.*
per-vĕnio, vēni, ventum (4), intr. *arrive*; p. in Haeduos—*reach the country of the Haedui*; ad eum pervenit—*belongs to him* vi. 19. 3.
pēs, pĕdis, m. *foot*; pedem refero—*fall back, retire*; pedibus, *on foot*; *a foot in length.*
pĕto, īvi, ītum (3), tr. *beg, ask, seek, procure, make for, attack*; p. fugam—*take to flight.*
phălanx, langis (acc. phalanga), f. *phalanx.*
pĭĕtās, ātis, f. *love of country, patriotism* v. 27. 7.
pīlum, i, *heavy javelin* (of legionary), *pilum.*
pīlus, i, *a century*; primus p.—*leading century of legion*; cf. **primipilus.**
pinna, ae, f. *pinnacle.*
piscis, is, m. *fish.*
pix, pĭcis, f. *pitch.*
plăceo, ui, ĭtum (2), intr. c. dat. *please*; placet mihi—*I decide.*
plăcidē, adv. *quietly.*
plāco (1), tr. *propitiate.*
plānē, adv. *clearly, entirely, quite.*
plānĭtiēs, ēi, f. *plain.*
plānus, a, um, *flat.*
plebs, plēbēs, plēbis, f. *populace, the masses.*
plēnē, adv. *completely.*
plēnus, a, um, *full, at full strength.*
plērīque, aeque, ăque, *most.*
plērumque, adv. *generally, for the most part.*
plumbum, i, n. *lead*; p. album—*tin.*
plūs, plūris, subst. and adv. *more*; plur. *several*; superl. **plūrĭmus,** *most, very many*; quam plurimi—*as many as possible*; plurimum, adv. *most, very much, very often.*
plŭteus, i, m. *breastwork.*
pōcŭlum, i, n. *drinking-cup.*
poena, ae, f. *punishment, fine, penalty*; poenas repeto—*seek satisfaction.*
pollex, ĭcis, m. *thumb.*
pollĭceor, lĭcĭtus sum (2), tr. and intr. *promise, offer.*
pollĭcĭtātio, ōnis, f. *promise, offer.*
pondus, ĕris, n. *weight.*
pōno, pŏsui, pŏsĭtum (3), tr. *place, put*; p. castra—*pitch camp*; p. arma—*lay down arms*; pass. *depend, am situated*; p. ante oculos—*picture*; p. pro certo—*make a positive statement*; p. spem salutis in virtute—*trust to valour for safety*; p. unum communi saluti auxilium in celeritate—*see that success is just possible with speed*; nullum amicis praesidium in eo positum est—*he cannot be relied upon to help his friends*; p. custodes alicui—*set spies on a person, keep him under surveillance.*
pons, ntis, m. *bridge, causeway.*
pŏpŭlātio, ōnis, f. *ravaging.*
pŏpŭlor (1), tr. *ravage.*
pŏpŭlus, i, m. *people, nation.*
porrĭgo, rexi, rectum (3), tr. *stretch out*; aperta loca porrecta—*a stretch of open ground.*
porro, adv. *furthermore.*
porta, ae, f. *gate, gateway.*

porto (1), tr. *carry, take.*
portōrium, i, n. *toll.*
portus, ūs, m. *harbour.*
posco, pŏposci (3), tr. *demand.*
pŏsĭtus, pf. partic. of pono, *situated, lying.*
possessio, ōnis, f. *dominion, occupation*; plur. *estates.*
possĭdeo, sēdi, sessum (2), tr. *possess.*
possīdo, sēdi, sessum (3), tr. *occupy.*
possum, pŏtui, posse, intr. *am able, can, have power*; fieri potest—*is possible*; plurimum p.—*am most powerful*; largiter p.—*have great influence*; quid in bello possent—*their military strength*; quid virtute possent —*their mighty valour.*
post, prep. c. acc. *after, behind*; post diem tertium—*on the third day*; adv. *after.*
posteā, adv. *afterwards*; p. quam —*when, after.*
postĕrus, a, um, *following*; postero die—*next day*; posteri —*posterity*; superl. postrēmus —*last.*
post-pōno, pŏsui, pŏsĭtum (3), tr. *postpone*; p. omnia alicui rei—*give a thing one's first attention.*
postquam, conj. *after, when.*
postrēmo, adv. *lastly, finally.*
postrīdiē, adv. *on the following day.*
postŭlātum, i, n. *demand.*
postŭlo (1), tr. *ask for, request, require, claim, demand.*
pŏtens, ntis, *powerful, influential.*
pŏtentātus, ūs, m. *supremacy.*
pŏtentia, ae, f. *influence.*
pŏtestās, ātis, f. *power, authority, opportunity, possibility*; vis ac potestas—*power and limits of dominion*; potestatem facere sui—*expose oneself to attack,* pugnandi—*offer battle,* discedendi—*give leave to depart.*
pŏtior (4), c. abl. or gen. *make oneself master of, usurp, achieve*; sine vulnere victoria potiri—*gain a bloodless victory.*
pŏtius, adv. *rather.*
prae, prep. c. abl. *contrasted with* ii. 30. 4; *owing to* vii. 44. 1.
prae-ăcūtus, a, um, *sharpened, pointed.*
praebeo, ui, ĭtum (2), tr. *offer, present*; p. opinionem—*give an impression.*
prae-căveo, cāvi, cautum (2), intr. *take precautions.*
prae-cēdo, cessi, cessum (3), tr. *surpass.*
praeceps, cĭpĭtis, *steep, headlong, precipitately.*
praeceptum, i, n. *order, instructions.*
praecĭpio, cēpi, ceptum (3), tr. *instruct*; p. opinione—*anticipate* vii. 9. 1.
praecĭpĭto (1), tr. *pitch down.*
praecĭpuē, adv. *especially.*
praecĭpuus, a, um, *especial.*
praeclūdo, si, sum (3), tr. *block.*
praeco, ōnis, m. *crier.*
prae-curro, curri and cŭcurri, cursum (3), intr. *hurry ahead, am too quick, forestall.*
praeda, ae, f. *plunder.*
praedīco (1), tr. *affirm, describe*: multa p. — *speak at great length.*
praedor (1), intr. *pillage.*
prae-dūco, xi, ctum (3), tr. *build in front.*
praefectus, i, m. *officer* (of cavalry).
prae-fĕro, tŭli, lātum, ferre, tr.

prefer, place before; reflex: c. dat. *outvie*.
praeficio, fēci, fectum (3), tr. *place in command, put in charge.*
prae-fīgo, xi, xum (3), tr. *plant in front.*
prae-mĕtuo, ui (3), intr. c. dat. *fear for a person's safety.*
prae-mitto, mīsi, missum (3), tr. *send ahead.*
praemium, i, n. *reward, award.*
prae-occŭpo (1), tr. *seize.*
prae-opto (1), intr. *prefer.*
prae-păro (1), tr. *prepare previously.*
prae-rumpo, rūpi, ruptum (3), tr. *break off.*
praeruptus, a, um, pf. partic. of praerumpo, *steep.*
prae-saepio, psi, ptum (4), tr. *bar.*
prae-scrībo, psi, ptum (3), intr. *decide, dictate.*
praescriptum, i, n. *mandate, instruction.*
praesens, ntis, *present.*
praesentia, ae, f. *presence*; in praesentiā—*for the time, at the moment.*
prae-sentio, si, sum (4), tr. *anticipate, get wind of.*
praesertim, adv. *especially.*
praesĭdium, i, n. *garrison, guard, escort, detachment, outpost, protection*; plur. *pickets*; in praesidio—*on guard*; praesidio litterarum—*by relying on documents.*
praesto, adv. *present*; p. sum (c. dat.), *wait upon.*
prae-sto, stĭti, stĭtum, āre, tr. and intr. *surpass, excel, am superior*; praestat—*it is better*; *display*; p. fidem—*do loyal service*; p. officium—*do one's duty.*
prae-sum, fui, esse, c. dat. and absol. *am at the head, am over, rule, command, superintend.*
praeter, prep. c. acc. *past, except, contrary to.*
praetĕrĕā, adv. *besides.*
praetĕr-eo, ii, ĭtum, īre, tr. *pass over*; praeteritus, *past*; n. plur. *the past.*
praeter-mitto, mīsi, missum (3), tr. *let pass, lose, forgo.*
praeterquam, adv. *besides, except.*
praetor, ōris, m. *praetor, general*; legatus pro praetore—*second in command.*
praetōrius, a, um, *of a general*; praetoria cohors—*body-guard.*
praeustus, a, um, *burnt at the end.*
prae-verto, ti, sum (3), c. dat. *give preference to.*
prāvus, a, um, *bad.*
prĕces, um, f. *entreaties, prayers*; omnibus precibus detestor—*curse heartily.*
prĕmo, pressi, pressum (3), tr. *press, press hard, harass, crush, jostle.*
prendo, di, sum (3), tr. *grasp.*
prĕtium, i, n. *price.*
prīdiē, adv. *the day before.*
prīmĭpīlus, i, m. *chief centurion.*
prīmo, adv. *at first.*
prīmum, adv. *first, in the first place*; cum, ubi primum—*as soon as*; quam primum—*as soon as possible.*
prīmus, a, um, *first, leading*; prima lux—*daybreak*; primo adventu—*immediately on the arrival*; in primis—*first of all, especially.*
princeps, cĭpis, *first, leading*; p. locus—*leadership*; subst.

leading man, notable, head, chieftain; p. consilii—*ringleader.*

prīncĭpātus, ūs, m. *principal power, supremacy, chief magistracy.*

prior, us, compar. adj. *former, forward, taking the lead*; susbt. priores—*the van.*

pristĭnus, a, um, *ancient, previous.*

prius, adv. *before*; p. quam, conj. *before.*

prīvātim, adv. *unofficially, as a private person* or *persons.*

prīvātus, a, um, *private, belonging to individuals.*

prō, prep. c. abl. *before, for, instead of, on behalf of, in return for, in proportion to, compared with, considering, in the guise of*; pro certo, explorato habeo —*regard as certain*; pro viso renuntio—*report as actually seen*; pro tempore et pro re—*as the circumstances of the moment might direct.*

prŏbo (1), tr. *prove, approve, think highly of*; c. dat. *convince* i. 3. 6.

prō-cēdo, cessi, cessum (3), intr. *advance, go forward.*

prō-clīno (1), tr. *bend forward*; proclinatam rem adiuvo—*lend weight to the movement* vii. 42. 4.

prōconsul, ŭlis, m. *pro-consul.*

prŏcŭl, adv. *some way off, at a distance.*

prō-cumbo, cŭbui, cŭbĭtum (3), intr. *lie down, kneel, slope*; *is laid* (of corn).

prō-cūro (1), tr. *regulate* (sacrifices).

prō-curro, curri and cŭcurri, cursum (3), intr. *dash forward, charge.*

prōd-eo, ii, ĭtum, īre, intr. *advance, go forward.*

prōdĭtio, ōnis, f. *treason.*

prōdĭtor, ōris, m. *traitor.*

prō-do, dĭdi, dĭtum (3), tr. *hand down, publish*; proditum est memoriā—*there is an oral tradition.*

prō-dūco, xi, ctum (3), tr. *lead forth, bring out, prolong*; p. legionem—*parade the legion.*

proelior (1), intr. *fight, maintain the combat.*

proelium, i, n. *battle, skirmish.*

prŏfectio, ōnis, f. *departure, setting out.*

prō-fĕro, tŭli, lātum, ferre, tr. *bring forward.*

prōfĭcio, fēci, fectum (3), tr. and intr. *make progress, advance, gain*; nihil profici poterat — (*they*) *could effect nothing*; parum proficitur—*the gain is small*; p. aliquid—*strike an effective blow*; plus p. *have the advantage.*

prŏfĭciscor, profectus sum (3), intr. *set out, emigrate, start.*

prŏfĭteor, professus sum (2), tr. *offer, promise, declare.*

prōflīgo (1), tr. *defeat, rout.*

prō-fluo, xi, xum (3), intr. *flow forth*: p. ex—*rise in* (of a river).

prō-fŭgio, fūgi, fŭgĭtum (3), intr. *flee, escape.*

prōgnātus, a, um, *descended.*

prōgrĕdior, gressus sum (3), intr. *go forward, go forth, go.*

prŏhĭbeo, ui, ĭtum (2), tr. *prevent, repel, check, keep out, cut off, protect, block the way* i. 6. 1.

prōĭcio, iēci, iectum (3), tr. *throw, throw away, abandon*; p. arma—*ground arms*; p. virtutem—*sacrifice valour*; pass. *throw oneself.*

prōmĭneo, ui (2), intr. *lean over.*
prōmiscuē, adv. *promiscuously.*
prō-mitto, mīsi, missum (3), tr. *let grow long.*
prō-mŏveo, mōvi, mōtum (2), tr. *move forward, propel.*
promptus, a, um, *quick, ready.*
prōmuntūrium, i, n. *headland.*
prōnē, adv. *sloping, leaning forward.*
prō-nuntio (1), tr. *announce, state, declare, give the word.*
prŏpĕ, adv. and prep. c. acc. *almost, near.*
prō-pello, pŭli, pulsum (3), tr. *repulse, drive off.*
própĕro (1), intr. *hurry, hasten.*
prŏpinquĭtās, ātis, f. *proximity, relationship, blood.*
prŏpinquus, a, um, *near*; subst. plur. *relations.*
prŏpius, compar. of prope, *nearer.*
prō-pōno, pŏsui, pŏsĭtum (3), tr. *offer, state, display, describe*; p. animo—*intend*; p. hoc mihi solacii—*I console myself with this.*
prŏprius, a, um, *of one's own, private, particular*; proprium virtutis — *a tribute to their valour* (lit. *a special mark of their valour*).
propter, prep. c. acc. *owing to.*
proptĕreā, adv. *on this account*; p. quod—*because.*
prōpugnātor, ōris, m. *defender.*
prō-pugno (1), intr. *throw missiles*; *resist.*
prōpulso (1), tr. *repel, keep at bay.*
prōra, ae, f. *bow, prow.*
prō-ruo, rui, rŭtum (3), tr. *demolish.*
pro-sĕquor, sĕcūtus sum (3), tr. *pursue*; c. abl. *honour with.*
prospectus, ūs, m. *view, sight.*
prospĭcio, spexi, spectum (3), intr. *look forth, provide*; p. rei frumentariae—*secure the supplies.*
prō-sterno, strāvi, strātum (3), tr. *ruin.*
prō-sum, fui, prōdesse, intr. c. dat. *help, save.*
prō-tĕgo, xi, ctum (3), tr. *cover, protect.*
prō-terreo, ui, ĭtum (2), tr. *drive off.*
prōtĭnus, adv. *forthwith, at once.*
prō-turbo (1), tr. *rout, drive, dislodge.*
prō-vĕhor, vectus sum (3), pass. *sail forth.*
prō-vĕnio, vēni, ventum (4), intr. *grow up* (of corn).
prōventus, ūs, m. *result, issue.*
prō-vĭdeo, vīdi, vīsum (2), tr. *foresee, arrange for, have ready.*
prōvincia, ae, f. *province, the Province.*
prōvinciālis, e, *living in the Province.*
prō-vŏlo (1), intr. *dart forth.*
proxĭmē, superl. adv. *recently.*
proxĭmus, a, um, *neighbouring, close by, recent*; proxima nox—*the following night*; qua proximum iter erat—*by the shortest road.*
prūdentia, ae, f. *sound judgement.*
pūbēs, pūbĕr, ĕris, *adult.*
publĭcē, adv. *officially, by* or *in the name of the government, state, as a community.*
publĭco (1), tr. *confiscate.*
publĭcus, a, um, *of the state*; p. consilium—*government policy*; p. litterae—*state papers*; in publicum—*publicly.*
pŭdet, *it shames*; p. aliquem—*one is ashamed.*

pŭdor, ōris, m. *shame, sense of honour.*
puer, ĕri, m. *child.*
puĕrīlis, e, *of a child*; p. aetas, *childhood.*
pugna, ae, f. *battle, fight, action, engagement.*
pugno (1), intr. *fight*; pugnantes, *the combatants*; pugnandi potestatem facio—*offer battle.*
pulcher, chra, chrum, *fine, glorious.*
pulsus, ūs, m. *push, stroke*; p. remorum—*oar-propulsion, rowing.*
pulvis, ĕris, m. *dust.*
puppis, is, f. *stern.*
purgo (1), reflex. *clear myself*; si sibi purgati esse vellent—*if they wished him to hold them guiltless.*
pŭto (1), tr. *believe, am convinced, feel.*

Q. = *Quintus.*
quā, adv. *where, so far as* vii. 36. 2.
quaero, sīvi, sītum (3), tr. *seek for, inquire, inquire into.*
quaestio, ōnis, f. *investigation*; quaestionem habeo de—*examine by torture.*
quaestor, ōris, m. *quaestor.*
quaestus, ūs, m. *acquisition.*
quālis, e, what sort.
quam, adv. *how*; quam diu—*as long as*; after comparatives, *than*; with superlatives, e. g. quam celerrime—*as quickly as possible,* quam primum—*as soon as possible,* quam plurimi—*as many as possible.*
quamvīs, adv. *however.*
quando, adv. *at any time*; si q.—*if ever, whenever.*
quantus, a, um, *how great, as*; quanto, *by how much*; quanto gravior oppugnatio . . . tanto crebriores litterae—*the fiercer the attack . . . the more frequent the dispatches*; quanto opere—*how greatly*; quanto opere . . . tanto opere—*much as . . . just so much.*
quantusvīs, ăvis, umvis, *ever so large.*
quārē, conj. *wherefore, why, for which.*
quartus, a, um, *fourth.*
quăsĭ, conj. *as if.*
quattuor, indecl. *four.*
-quĕ, enclitic conj. *and.*
quĕror, questus sum (3), tr. and intr. *bemoan, lament, complain, complain of.*
quī, quae, quŏd, relative pron. *who, which, that.*
quī, quae, quŏd, interrogative adj. *which? what?*
quī, quă, quŏd, indefinite pron. *any one, anything.*
quicquam, neuter of quisquam.
quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *whoever, whatever.*
quīdam, quaedam, quoddam, *a certain*; plur. *some.*
quĭdĕm, conj. *indeed, but*; ne . . . quidem—*not even.*
quiēs, ētis, f. *rest, sleep.*
quiētus, a, um, *peaceable, at rest.*
quīn, conj. *but that, that not, that*; after verbs of preventing, turn by *from*; q. etiam—*nay more.*
quīnam, quaenam, quodnam, *who? what?*
quincunx, cis, m. *quincunx* (the arrangement of the black squares on a chess-board).
quingenti, ae, a, *five hundred.*
quīni, ae, a, *five each, five.*
quĭs, quĭd, interrogative pron. *who? what?* quid, *why?*

quĭs, quă, quĭd, indefinite pron. and adj. *any one, anything, any.*
quispiam, quaepiam, quidpiam, *any, any one.*
quisquam, quicquam, *any one, anything.*
quisque, quaeque, quidque, *each one, each, every*; cuiusque modi consilia — *manifold devices*; with superlatives, *all the most . . .*; decimus quisque—*one in ten.*
quisquĭs, quaequae, quicquid, *whoever, whatever.*
quīvīs, quaevīs, quodvīs, *any whatever.*
quō, adv. indef. *in any direction*; adv. relative and interrogative, *whither, where*; quo adire possum—*within reach*; with comparatives, see **eo**; quo minus, *that not* (after verbs of hindering); conj. c. subj. = ut eo.
quŏăd, adv. *so long as, till.*
quŏd, conj. *because, as for the fact that, that*; quod si—*but if.*
quŏnĭam, conj. *since, seeing that.*
quŏquĕ, conj. *also.*
quōquĕ versus, adv. *in all directions.*
quŏt, *how many, as many as.*
quŏtannīs, adv. *yearly.*
quŏtiens, adv. *as often as, how often.*

rādix, īcis, f. *root*; plur. *base* (of a mountain).
rādo, si, sum (3), tr. *shave.*
raeda, ae, f. *cart, carriage.*
rāmus, i, m. *branch, bough.*
răpĭdĭtās, ātis, f. *swiftness.*
răpīnae, ārum, f. *looting.*
rārus, a, um, *few at a time, far between, here and there.*
rāsus, see rado.
rătio, ōnis, f. *reason, principle, system, method, plan, computation, schedule* i. 29. 1, *document* vi. 14. 3; rationem ineo—*make a calculation, decide*; rationem habeo—*administer, think, take account*; rationem reposco ab—*call to account*; aliā ratione—*otherwise*; omnibus rationibus—*in every way.*
rătis, is, f. *raft.*
rĕbellio, ōnis, f. *renewal of hostilities.*
rĕ-cēdo, cessi, cessum (3), intr. *retire.*
rĕcens, ntis, *fresh, recent.*
rĕ-censeo, ui, sum (2), tr. *review.*
rĕceptācŭlum, i, n. *refuge.*
rĕceptus, ūs, m. *retreat, refuge, power* or *means of retreat.*
rĕcessus, ūs, m. *means of retreat.*
rĕcĭdo, cĭdi (3), intr. c. ad, *befall.*
rĕcĭpio, cēpi, ceptum (3), tr. *receive, take, get back, recover, withdraw, receive the submission of*; (timor) non recipit (misericordiam)—*leaves no room for*; reflex. *retreat, withdraw, repair, return, recover myself*; r. me ex—*rally.*
rĕcĭto (1), tr. *read aloud.*
rĕ-clīno (1), tr. *lean*; reflex. and pass. in intrans. sense.
rectē, adv. *prudently, gallantly.*
rectus, a, um, *straight.*
rĕcŭpĕro (1), tr. *recover, win back.*
rĕcūso (1), tr. and intr. *discard, shrink from, object, protest, refuse.*
rĕdactus, see redigo.
red-do, dĭdi, dĭtum (3), tr. *restore, duly offer, render*; r. ius—*grant justice*; r. supplica-

tionem—*hold a thanksgiving service*; r. aliquid tutum—*secure a thing.*

rĕd-eo, ii, ĭtum, īre, intr. *return*; res redit ad—*a matter is referred to, belongs to*; ad duas legiones redierat—*he was reduced to two legions.*

rĕdĭgo, ēgi, actum (3), tr. *reduce, render*; r. in provinciam—*annex.*

rĕdĭmo, ēmi, emptum (3), tr. *purchase*; vectigalia redempta habeo—*farm taxes.*

rĕd-intĕgro (1), tr. *renew, restore, recruit.*

rĕdĭtio, ōnis, f. *return.*

rĕdĭtus, ūs, m. *return.*

rĕ-dūco, xi, ctum (3), tr. *bring back, draw back, draw behind.*

rĕ-fĕro, rettŭli, rĕlātum, rĕferre, tr. *bring, convey, report*; r. pedem—*fall back, give ground*; r. in publicum—*exhibit*; r. gratiam—*show gratitude.*

rĕfĭcio, fēci, fectum (3), tr. *repair, put in condition*; reflex. *rest.*

rĕfringo, frēgi, fractum (3), tr. *break, burst open.*

rĕfŭgio, fūgi, fŭgĭtum (3), intr. *escape.*

rĕgio, ōnis, f. *region, district, direction*; e regione—*opposite*; rectā fluminis regione—*along the line of the river*; rectā regione—*in a straight line.*

rēgius, a, um, *royal.*

regno (1), intr. *am king.*

regnum, i, n. *kingly power, sovereignty.*

rĕgo, xi, ctum (3), tr. *direct, manage, guide, steer.*

reĭcio, iēci, iectum (3), tr. *drive back, repulse, cast out, throw back.*

rĕ-languesco, gui (3), intr. *grow feeble.*

rĕlēgo (1), tr. *banish.*

rĕlĭgio, ōnis, f. *religion, scruples*; plur. *questions of religion, religious observances, obligations, superstitious fancies.*

rĕ-linquo, līqui, lictum (3), tr. *leave, abandon, raise* (a siege); impers. pass. *it remains.*

rĕlĭquus, a, um, *remaining, further*; nihil reliqui—*nothing left*; nihil reliqui facio—*leave nothing undone*; in reliquum tempus—*for the future*; subst. reliqui—*the rest.*

rĕ-măneo, mansi, mansum (2), intr. *stay behind.*

rēmex, ĭgis, m. *oarsman.*

rēmĭgo (1), intr. *row.*

rĕmĭgro (1), intr. *move back again.*

rĕmĭniscor, isci, intr. c. gen. *remember.*

rĕmissior, compar. adj. *less severe.*

rĕ-mitto, mīsi, missum (3), tr. *send, fling, give back*; *stop, relax, enervate.*

rĕ-mollesco (3), intr. *soften.*

rĕmōtus, a, um, pf. partic. of removeo, *out of reach.*

rĕ-mŏveo, mōvi, mōtum (2), tr. *dismiss, send away, draw away, force back.*

rĕ-mūnĕror (1), tr. *reward.*

rēmus, i, m. *oar.*

rēno, ōnis, m. *reindeer skin.*

rĕ-nŏvo (1), tr. *renew.*

rĕ-nuntio (1), tr. *report, declare elected* vii. 33. 3.

rĕ-pello, reppŭli, rĕpulsum (3), tr. *beat back, drive back*; repulsus, *foiled*; r. ab spe—*rebuffed.*

rĕpentĕ, adv. *suddenly.*

rĕpentīnus, a, um, *sudden, unexpected.*
rĕpĕrio, reppĕri, rĕpertum (4), tr. *ascertain, find, find existing* vi. 13; reperti sunt qui—*some actually.*
rĕ-pĕto, īvi, ītum (3), tr. *attempt to recover*; r. poenas—*exact satisfaction.*
rĕ-pleo, ēvi, ētum (2), tr. *satisfy.*
rĕ-porto (1), tr. *carry back.*
rĕ-posco (3), tr. *demand.*
rĕ-praesento (1), tr. *do at once.*
rĕ-prĕhendo, di, sum (3), tr. *find fault with, condemn.*
rĕprĭmo, pressi, pressum (3), tr. *check, stop.*
rĕpŭdio (1), tr. *reject.*
rĕ-pugno (1), intr. c. dat. *oppose, resist*; unum repugnat—*there is one objection.*
rĕquīro, quīsīvi, quīsītum (3), tr. *miss, feel the loss of, require.*
rēs, rēi, f. *thing*—but this is seldom the best rendering. The following equivalents are from book i: *motive, scheme, enterprise, mission, action, events, move, favours, request, circumstance, problem, danger.* Also—*fact, the facts, experience*; r. publica—*state affairs, political affairs, the (Roman) republic*; r. militaris—*war, military power*; rem obtineo—*hold one's ground*; rei necessitas — *emergency*; rebus desperatis—*despairing of success*; suis rebus timere—*feel alarm on one's own account.*
re-scindo, scĭdi, scissum (3), tr. *break down, tear down.*
re-scisco, scīvi, scītum (3), tr. *discover.*
re-scribo, psi, ptum (3), *transfer*; r. ad equum—*knight, enter on list of equites.*
rĕ-servo (1), tr. *keep, reserve, make an exception of.*
rĕsĭdeo, sēdi, sessum (2), intr. *remain, am left.*
rĕ-sīdo, sēdi, sessum (3), intr. *grow calm.*
rĕ-sisto, stĭti (3), intr. *remain, hold out*; c. dat. *cope with, resist*; resistens—*capable of resistance.*
respĭcio, spexi, spectum (3), tr. and intr. *look back, have regard to.*
re-spondeo, di, sum (2), intr. *reply.*
responsum, i, n. *reply.*
re-spuo, ui, ūtum (3), tr. *spurn, reject.*
re-stinguo, nxi, nctum (3), tr. *put out* (a fire).
restĭtuo, ui, ūtum (3), tr. *restore, rebuild.*
rĕtĭneo, tĭnui, tentum (2), tr. *detain, keep, restrain*; r. memoriam—*remember*; r. pristinam virtutem—*be true to oneself.*
rĕ-trăho, xi, ctum (3), tr. *bring back.*
rĕ-vello, velli, vulsum (3), tr. *tear, pull out.*
rĕ-vertor, versus sum (3), intr. *turn back, return.*
rĕ-vincio, nxi, nctum (4), tr. *make fast, fasten, secure*; in contrariam partem revinctus —*secured in the opposite direction* (i. e. by a diagonal tie).
rĕ-vŏco (1), tr. *recall, draw away.*
rex, rēgis, m. *king.*
rīpa, ae, f. *bank* (of a river).
rīvus, i, m. *stream.*
rōbur, ŏris, n. *oak.*
rŏgo (1), tr. *ask for, ask*; r. sacramento—*enlist, swear in.*
rostrum, i, n. *beak* (of a ship), *prow, ram.*

rŭbus, i, m. *bramble-bush.*
rūmor, ōris, m. *rumour*; plur. *gossip.*
rursus, adv. *in turn, back, again.*

săcerdōs, dōtis, m. *priest.*
săcrāmentum, i, n. *military oath*; sacramento rogo—*swear in* (recruits).
săcrĭfĭcium, i, n. *sacrifice*; sacrificiis interdico—*excommunicate.*
saepĕ, adv. *often*; compar. saepius—*too often, many times*; saepe numero—*repeatedly.*
saepēs, is, f. *hedge.*
saevio (4), intr. *rage, blow hard* (of wind).
săgitta, ae, f. *arrow.*
săgittārius, i, m. *archer.*
săgŭlum, i, n. *cloak.*
saltus, ūs, m. *wooded glade, thicket* vii. 19.
sălūs, ūtis, f. *well-being, weal, life, safety, salvation.*
sancio, nxi, nctum (4), tr. *bind, ratify*; inter se sanxerunt—*they bound themselves*; sanctum legibus habeo—*have a legal enactment.*
sanctus, a, um, *sacred.*
sanguis, ĭnis, m. *blood, bloodshed.*
sānĭtās, ātis, f. *a right mind, reason.*
sāno (1), tr. *repair, make good.*
sānus, a, um, *reasonable*; pro sano facio—*behave rationally.*
săpio, sapīvi (3), intr. *have sense, understand.*
sarcĭnae, ārum, f. (soldiers') *packs*; sub sarcinis—*in heavy marching order.*
sarcio, sarsi, sartum (4), tr. *repair, make good.*
sarmenta, ōrum, n. *brushwood, faggots.*
sătis, adv. *enough, quite, very, fairly*; subst. c. gen. *enough of*; s. facio—*make reparation, appease, do one's duty.*
sătisfactio, ōnis, f. *excuses, apology.*
sătus, see **sero**.
saucius, a, um, *wounded.*
saxum, i, n. *stone, rock.*
scālae, ārum, f. *ladder.*
scăpha, ae, f. *skiff.*
scĕlĕrātus, a, um, *vicious*; impius et s.—*an impious monster*; subst. *scoundrel.*
scĕlus, ĕris, n. *crime, guilt.*
scienter, adv. *skilfully.*
scientia, ae, f. *knowledge, skill.*
scindo, scĭdi, scissum (3), tr. *demolish, tear up.*
scio (4), tr. *know.*
scorpio, ōnis, m. *small catapult.*
scrībo, psi, ptum (3), tr. *write.*
scrŏbis, is, c. *pit.*
scūtum, i, n. *shield.*
sē, **sēsē**, *himself, themselves*; inter se—*mutually.*
sēbum, i, n. *fat.*
sĕco, ui, ctum, āre, tr. *cut.*
sēcrēto, adv. *separately, privately.*
sectio, ōnis, f. *booty.*
sector (1), tr. *pursue.*
sectūra, ae, f. *digging, cutting.*
sĕcundum, prep. c. acc. *along, by*; s. ea—*besides these considerations.*
sĕcundus, a, um, *second, favourable, successful*; secundae res—*prosperity*; secundum proelium facio—*gain a victory*; secundo flumine—*down stream.*
sĕcūris, is, f. *lictor's axe.*
sĕd, conj. *but.*
sēdĕcim, num. adj. *sixteen.*

sēdēs, is, f. *settlement, land for settling in.*
sēditio, ōnis, f. *riot, mutiny.*
sēditiōsus, a, um, *seditious.*
sĕgĕs, ĕtis, f. *crop, field of corn.*
sĕmĕl, adv. *once*; s. atque iterum—*repeatedly.*
sēmentis, is, f. *sowing.*
sēmita, ae, f. *track.*
semper, adv. *always.*
sĕnātor, ōris, m. *senator, councillor.*
sĕnātus, ūs, m. *senate, council.*
sĕnex, sĕnis, m. *old man.*
sēni, ae, a, *six each, six.*
sententia, ae, f. *opinion, resolve,* in eam sententiam dico—*speak to that effect*; sententias exquiro —*invite opinions.*
sentio, si, sum (4), tr. *perceive, understand, realize, think*; s. ĭdem—*agree*; non aliter sentio quin—*feel sure that.*
sentis, is, c. *brier.*
sēpărātim, adv. *separately.*
sē-păro (1), tr. *separate, sever.*
septentrio, ōnis, m. *north, the constellation of the Great Bear.*
septĭmus, a, um, *seventh.*
sĕpultūra, ae, f. *burying.*
sĕquor, cūtus sum (3), tr. and intr. *follow, ensue.*
Ser. = *Servius.*
sermo, ōnis, m. *conversation, speech, intercourse*; aditum sermonis habeo—*have a claim to address.*
sĕro, sēvi, sătum (3), tr. *sow.*
sēro, adv. *too late.*
servīlis, e, *of a slave*; in servilem modum—*like slaves*; s. tumultus—*the Slave War.*
servio (4), c. dat. *devote oneself to*; s. rumoribus—*trust blindly to rumours.*
servitūs, ūtis, f. *bondage, subjection.*
servo (1), tr. *save, keep, maintain, watch.*
servus, i, m. *slave.*
sēsē, see **se.**
sesquipĕdālis, e, *a foot and a half thick.*
sētius, compar. adv. *otherwise*; nihilo s.—*none the less.*
seu, sīve, conj. *or if*; seu . . . seu —*whether . . . or, to see if . . . or.*
sĕvērĭtās, ātis, f. *severity.*
sē-vŏco (1), tr. *take aside.*
sex, num. adj. *six.*
sī, conj. *if, to see if, in case*; si minus—*if not*; si quando—*if ever.*
sīc, adv. *so, as follows.*
siccitās, ātis, f. *drought, dry state.*
sicut, sīcŭti, adv. *just as, as if, as it were.*
sīdus, ĕris, n. *star, heavenly body.*
signĭfer, ĕri, m. *standard-bearer.*
signĭfĭcātio, ōnis, f. *sign, signal, indication, announcement, behaviour* vii. 12. 6.
signĭfĭco (1), tr. *indicate, make known.*
signum, i, n. *signal, standard*; signa fero, infero—*advance, charge*; ab signis discedo, signa relinquo — *abandon regular formation, leave the ranks*, signa converto—*wheel about*; signa constituo—*halt.*
silentium, i, n. *silence*; abl. *silently.*
silva, ae, f. *wood, forest.*
silvester, tris, tre, *wooded.*
sĭmĭlis, e, *like*; s. atque—*same as*; veri s.—*probable.*
sĭmĭlĭtūdo, ĭnis, f. *likeness.*
sĭmŭl, adv. *at the same time, at once*; s. atque—*as soon as*; simul . . . simul—*both . . . and.*
sĭmŭlācrum, i, n. *image.*
sĭmŭlātio, ōnis, f. *deceit, pre-*

tended anxiety i. 40. 10; inanis s.—*mere bravado.*
sĭmŭlo (1), tr. *pretend, feign*; simulatā amicitiā—*under the mask of friendship.*
sĭmultās, ātis, f. *rivalry, acrimony.*
sīn, conj. *but if.*
sincērē, adv. *honestly, frankly.*
sĭnĕ, prep. c. abl. *without.*
singillātim, adv. *individually.*
singŭlāris, e, *solitary, one by one, extraordinary, most valuable.*
singŭli, ae, a, *one each, one at a time, single, each.*
sĭnister, tra, trum, *left*; sinistra, ae, f. *left hand.*
sĭnistrorsus, adv. *to the left.*
sino, sīvi, sĭtum (3), tr. *allow.*
sĭtus, ūs, m. *situation.*
sīve, see **seu.**
sŏcer, ĕri, m. *father-in-law.*
sŏcĭĕtās, ātis, f. *alliance.*
sŏcius, i, m. *ally.*
sōl, sōlis, m. *sun.*
sōlācium, i, n. *consolation.*
soldurii, ōrum, m. *soldurii.*
sŏleo, sŏlĭtus sum (2), intr. *am wont, accustomed.*
sōlĭtūdo, ĭnis, f. *desert land.*
sollertia, ae, f. *ingenuity.*
sollĭcĭto (1), tr. *egg on, call upon, make overtures to, tempt.*
sollĭcĭtūdo, ĭnis, f. *anxiety.*
sŏlum, i, n. *ground, bottom* (of trench); s. agri—*bare soil.*
sōlum, adv. *only, alone.*
sōlus, a, um, *alone, only.*
solvo, solvi, sŏlūtum (3), tr. *set sail* (sc. navem), *sail out.*
sŏnĭtus, ūs, m. *sound, noise.*
sŏnus, i, m. *sound.*
sŏror, ōris, f. *sister*; s. ex matre—*sister on the mother's side.*
sors, rtis, f. *lot*; sortibus consulo—*cast lots.*
spătium, i, n. *space, time, interval*; spatia omnis temporis—*all periods of time.*
spĕciēs, ēi, f. *appearance, spectacle*; ad, in speciem—*for show, to make an effect*; species varietasque—*a variegated appearance.*
specto (1), tr. and intr. *examine, look to, have regard to, look*; s. in septentrionem—*have a northerly aspect.*
spĕcŭlātor, ōris, m. *scout.*
spĕcŭlātōrius, a, um, *for scouting*; s. navigia—(*naval*) *scouts.*
spĕcŭlor (1), intr. *spy.*
spēro (1), tr. *hope for, hope.*
spēs, spēi, f. *hope*; s. fallit me—*am disappointed*; spe lapsus, deiectus—*thus disappointed.*
spīrĭtus, ūs, m. *haughtiness.*
spŏlio (1), tr. c. abl. *rob of.*
spontĕ suā, *spontaneously, on one's own account, by one's own efforts.*
stăbĭlio (4), tr. *keep firm.*
stăbĭlĭtās, ātis, f. *steadiness.*
stătim, adv. *immediately, at once.*
stătio, ōnis, f. *picket*; in statione—*on guard.*
stătuo, ui, ūtum (3), tr. *determine, decide, believe, plant, set up*; s. aliquid gravius in—*take severe measures against.*
stătūra, ae, f. *stature.*
stătus, ūs, m. *situation, condition, attitude.*
stĭmŭlus, i, m. *spur.*
stīpendiārius, i, m. *tributary.*
stīpendium, i, n. *tribute.*
stīpĕs, ĭtis, m. *log.*
stirps, is, f. *brood, stock, race.*
sto, stĕti, stătum, āre, intr. *stand*; s. decreto—*abide by a decision.*
strāmentum, i, n. *thatch, pack-saddle.*

strĕpĭtus, ūs, m. *clatter, uproar, din.*
stŭdeo, ui (2), c. dat. *am eager for, apply myself to, pay attention to*; c. inf. *desire.*
stŭdiōsē, adv. *eagerly, sedulously.*
stŭdium, i, n. *energy, devotion, desire, eagerness*; plur. *pursuits.*
sŭb, prep. (1) c. abl. *under, at the foot of*; sub sinistra—*on the port quarter*; (2) c. acc. *under, up to*; (of time) *towards.*
sŭbactus, see **subigo.**
subdŏlus, a, um, *plausible.*
sub-dūco, xi, ctum (3), tr. *draw up, lead up, withdraw, beach* (a ship).
subductio, ōnis, f. *hauling ashore.*
sŭb-eo, ii, ĭtum, īre, tr. *undergo, face, incur, stoop to accept, shelter under, approach.*
sub-fŏdio, fōdi, fossum (3), tr. *stab in the belly.*
subĭcio, iēci, iectum (3), tr. *place under, subdue, throw*; s. navigationem hiemi—*risk a stormy passage*; pass. *lie near.*
sŭbĭgo, ēgi, actum (3), tr. *subdue, bring low.*
sŭbĭto, adv. *hastily, hurriedly, on a sudden.*
sŭbĭtus, a, um, *hasty, sudden, unforeseen.*
sublātus, see **tollo.**
sub-lĕvo (1), tr. *help, assist, support, raise, lighten* (labour).
sublĭca, ae, f. *pile.*
sub-luo, ui, ūtum (3), tr. *wash.*
sub-mĭnistro (1), tr. *supply, provide.*
sub-mitto, mīsi, missum (3), tr. *send up, send to help, send.*
sub-mŏveo, mōvi, mōtum (2), tr. *drive off.*
sub-ruo, ui, ŭtum (3), tr. *uproot, undermine.*
sub-sĕquor, sĕcūtus sum (3), tr. and intr. *follow, follow on.*
subsĭdium, i, n. *reserve, support, relief, help*; subsidio duco—*bring up as reinforcements.*
sub-sīdo, sēdi, sessum (3), intr. *remain behind.*
sub-sisto, stĭti (3), intr. *halt, hold fast.*
sub-sum, fui, esse, intr. *am near, come on* (of time).
sub-trăho, xi, ctum (3), tr. *draw away, withdraw.*
subvectio, ōnis, f. *transport, conveyance.*
sub-vĕho, vexi, vectum (3), tr. *bring up.*
sub-vĕnio, vēni, ventum (4), intr. c. dat. *help, try to save.*
suc-cēdo, cessi, cessum (3), intr. *come up, come on, succeed*; s. in—*succeed to*; s. sub—*move up against*; c. dat. *take the place of, relieve*; s. ad—*adjoin.*
succendo, di, sum (3), tr. *set on fire.*
succīdo, cīdi, cīsum (3), tr. *cut down.*
suc-cumbo, cŭbui, cŭbĭtum (3), intr. *give in.*
suc-curro, curri and cŭcurri, cursum (3), intr. *run to the rescue.*
sŭdis, is, f. *stake.*
suffĭcio, fēci, fectum (3), intr. *am sufficient.*
suffrāgium, i, n. *vote.*
suggestus, ūs, m. *mound, camp tribunal.*
sui, sĭbi, sē, *oneself, himself, themselves.*
sum, fui, esse, *am, remain, happen*; c. gen. *belong to*; est mihi—*I have.*
summa, ae, f. *total, main part, management*; s. imperii—*chief*

command; s. belli—*direction of the campaign.*
summus, a, um, *chief, highest, utmost, boundless, perfect*; s. mons—*top of the mountain*; summae res—*matters of the highest importance*; summis copiis contendo—*fight a general action*; ab summo—*from the summit.*
sūmo, mpsi, mptum (3), tr. *take, get, assume*; s. supplicium de—*inflict punishment on.*
sumptuōsus, a, um, *costly.*
sumptus, ūs, m. *expense.*
sŭperbē, adv. *with arrogance, tyrannically.*
sŭpĕrior, ius, *higher, upper, superior, former, previous*; s. sum—*get the better of it*; superiores loci—*the heights.*
sŭpĕro (1), tr. *overpower, defeat, beat, surpass, overtop*; s. vita—*outlive*; abs. *gain a victory.*
sŭper-sĕdeo, sēdi, sessum (2), intr. c. dat. or abl. *avoid, decline.*
sŭper-sum, fui, esse, intr. *remain over, survive.*
sup-pĕto, īvi, ītum (3), intr. *am in store, at hand, last out*; non s.—*fail.*
supplēmentum, i, n. *a fresh draft.*
supplex, ĭcis, *suppliant, humble.*
supplĭcātio, ōnis, f. *thanksgiving service.*
supplĭciter, adv. *humbly.*
supplĭcium, i, n. *punishment.*
sup-porto (1), tr. *bring up.*
sŭprā, adv. and prep. c. acc. *above*; (of time) *before.*
suscĭpio, cēpi, ceptum (3), tr. *undertake, undergo.*
suspectus, a, um, *suspected, an object of suspicion.*
suspĭcio, ōnis, f. *suspicion, imputation.*
suspĭcor (1), tr. *suspect, anticipate.*
sustento (1), tr. and intr. *endure, hold out.*
sustĭneo, tĭnui, tentum (2), tr. *withstand, endure, hold out, keep in hand* (horse); reflex. *keep one's feet.*
sustŭli, see tollo.
suus, a, um, *his own, their own.*

tăbernācŭlum, i, n. *tent.*
tăbŭla, ae, f. *document.*
tăbŭlātum, i, n. *story.*
tăceo, ui, ĭtum (2), tr. and intr. *keep silent, keep silent about.*
tăcĭtus, a, um, *speechless.*
tālea, ae, f. *bar, block.*
tālis, e, *such.*
tam, adv. *so, so much.*
tămen, adv. *however, nevertheless, at any rate, yet.*
tămetsi, conj. *although.*
tandem, adv. *at length*; quid t.—*what on earth?*
tango, tĕtĭgi, tactum (3), tr. *touch, border on.*
tantŏpĕrĕ, adv. *so keenly.*
tantŭlus, a, um, *so small, so trifling.*
tantum, adv. *so much, only*; t. modo—*only.*
tantundem, adv. *only so far.*
tantus, a, um, *so great*; tanti, *so valuable*; subst. tantum, *so much.*
tardē, adv. *slowly.*
tardo (1), tr. *check, delay.*
tardus, a, um, *slow*; tardiores esse—*to have lost all dash.*
taurus, i, m. *bull.*
taxus, i, f. *yew.*
tectum, i, n. *roof.*
tĕgĭmentum, i, n. *cloak, covering.*
tĕgo, xi, ctum (3), tr. *roof, cover, conceal.*
tēlum, i, n. *missile.*

tĕmĕrārius, a, um, *headstrong.*
tĕmĕrē, adv. *heedlessly, readily, lightly.*
tĕmĕrĭtās, ātis, f. *rashness, recklessness.*
tēmo, ōnis, m. *pole.*
tempĕrantia, ae, f. *good sense.*
tempĕrātus, a, um, *of equable climate, mild.*
tempĕro (1), intr. *refrain.*
tempestās, ātis, f. *storm, gale, weather.*
tempto (1), tr. *attempt, try, tempt, assail.*
tempus, ŏris, n. *time*; omni tempore—*at all times*; tempore exclusus—*stopped by want of time.*
tendo, tĕtendi, tensum and tentum (3), tr. *stretch out, encamp.*
tĕnĕbrae, ārum, f. *darkness.*
tĕneo, ui, ntum (2), tr. *hold, occupy, detain, restrain, bind* (by oath); reflex. *keep close, stay.*
tĕner, ĕra, ĕrum, *young.*
tĕnuis, e, *weak, worthless.*
tĕnuĭtās, ātis, f. *poverty.*
tĕnuĭter, adv. *finely.*
tĕr, adv. *three times.*
tĕrĕs, ĕtis, *smooth, tapering.*
tergum, i, n. *back, rear*; terga vertere—*take to flight.*
terni, ae, a, *three each, three.*
terra, ae, f. *land, ground, earth*; plur. *the earth, world.*
terrēnus, a, um, *earthen.*
terreo, ui, ĭtum (2), tr. *overawe, terrify, unnerve, deter.*
terrĭto (1), tr. *frighten, intimidate.*
terror, ōris, m. *terror*; t. equorum—*terror inspired by the horses.*
tertius, a, um, *third.*
testāmentum, i, n. *will.*
testĭmōnium, i, n. *proof, evidence, trophy, report* (of a general) v. 52. 4.
testis, is, m. *witness.*
testūdo, ĭnis, f. (1) *sapper's hut,* (2) *testudo*; testudinem faciunt—*they lock their shields above their heads.*
tignum, i, n. *pile.*
tĭmeo, ui (2), tr. and intr. *fear, am alarmed.*
tĭmĭdē, adv. *nervously*; non t.—*fearlessly.*
tĭmĭdus, a, um, *cowardly, cowed.*
tĭmor, ōris, m. *fear, panic, cowardice.*
tŏlĕro (1), tr. *endure, hold out, support* (life).
tollo, sustŭli, sublātum, tollĕre, tr. *lift, take away, banish, remove, wipe out, stop, raise* (a cry), *take on board*; sublatus, *elated.*
tormentum, i, n. *torment, torture*; *windlass*; *artillery.*
torreo, ui, tostum (2), tr. *scorch, burn.*
tŏt, indecl. *so many.*
tŏtĭdem, indecl. *just as many.*
tōtus, a, um, *whole, entire.*
trabs, trăbis, f. *balk, beam.*
trā-do, dĭdi, dĭtum (3), tr. *give up, deliver up, surrender, pass on, teach, recommend* vii. 39.
trā-dūco, xi, ctum (3), tr. *cross, convey across, bring over, transfer*; pass. *cross over.*
trāgŭla, ae, f. *javelin.*
trăho, xi, ctum (3), tr. *drag*; per manus tractus — *passed along from hand to hand.*
trāĭcio, iēci, iectum (3), tr. *pierce.*
trāiectus, ūs, m. *crossing, passage.*
trāno (1), intr. *swim across.*
tranquillĭtās, ātis, f. *calm.*
trans, prep. c. acc. *across, beyond.*

transcendo, di, sum (3), tr. *climb over.*
trans-eo, ii, ĭtum, īre, tr. and intr. *cross, cross over, pass, pass through, pass on.*
trans-fĕro, tŭli, lātum, ferre, tr. *transfer.*
trans-fīgo, xi, xum (3), tr. *transfix.*
trans-fŏdio, fōdi, fossum (3), tr. *impale.*
transgrĕdior, gressus sum (3), tr. *step across.*
transitus, ūs, m. *crossing, migration.*
transmărīnus, a, um, *oversea*; transmarinae res—*seaborne products.*
transmissus, ūs, m. *passage.*
trans-mitto, mīsi, missum (3), tr. *send across, ferry over.*
transporto (1), tr. *carry over.*
transtrum, i, n. *cross-timber.*
transversus, a, um, *athwart, cross.*
trĕpĭdo (1), intr. *fuss, lose nerve*; trepidatur, *there is confusion.*
trēs, tria, *three.*
trĭbūnus, i, m. *tribune*; one of the six commanders of a legion.
trĭbuo, ui, ūtum (3), tr. *assign, ascribe, concede, bestow*; suae magnopere virtuti t.—*exaggerate one's own prowess*; t. plus communi saluti—*value more highly national liberty.*
trĭbūtum, i, n. *tax.*
trīduum, i, n. *three days.*
triennium, i, n. *three years.*
trīni, ae, a, *three each, three.*
trĭpertīto, adv. *in three divisions.*
trĭplex, ĭcis, *triple.*
trĭquĕtrus, a, um, *triangular.*
tristis, e, *sad, mournful.*
tristĭtia, ae, f. *mournful mood.*
truncus, i, m. *trunk.*
tū, tui, *thou, you.*
tŭba, ae, f. *trumpet.*
tueor, ēri, tr. *gaze on, defend, protect.*
tum, adv. *then, now, besides*; cum . . . tum—*while . . . so also*; tum etiam—*in the next place.*
tŭmultuor (1), intr. *make a commotion.*
tŭmultŭōsius, compar. adv. *noisily.*
tŭmultus, ūs, m. *confusion*; t. servilis—*the Slave War.*
tŭmŭlus, i, m. *hill, mound.*
tunc, adv. *then.*
turma, ae, f. *troop, squadron.*
turpis, e, *disgraceful, unbecoming.*
turpĭter, adv. *disgracefully.*
turpĭtūdo, ĭnis, f. *disgrace.*
turris, is, f. *tower, turret.*
tūtius, compar. adv. *more safely.*
tūto, adv. *safely.*
tūtus, a, um, *safe.*
tuus, a, um, *your, yours.*

ŭbĭ, adv. *when, where*; ubi primum—*as soon as.*
ŭbīquĕ, adv. *anywhere.*
ulciscor, ultus sum (3), tr. *avenge, punish, take vengeance on.*
ullus, a, um, *any.*
ultĕrior, us, *outer, further.*
ultĭmus, a, um, *last, furthest*; ultimi, *the rear ranks.*
ultrā, adv. and prep. c. acc. *further, beyond.*
ultrō, adv. *voluntarily, of one's own accord, actually, into the bargain*; u. citroque—*to and fro.*
ultus, see ulciscor.
ŭlŭlātus, ūs, m. *yell.*
ŭmĕrus, i, m. *shoulder.*
umquam, adv. *ever.*
ūnā, adv. *together, also.*

undĕ, adv. *whence, by whom, from which.*

undiquĕ, adv. *from all parts, on every side.*

ūniversus, a, um, *massed, all together, in one lot.*

ūnus, a, um, *one, a single, alone, only one, one and the same*; ad unum—*to a man.*

usquĕ, adv. *even, quite*; usque ad—*right up to*; usque eo ut—*so that.*

ūsus, ūs, m. *experience, practice, use. advantage*; plur. *the needs of life* vi. 24. 5; usui est—*it is serviceable, useful*; ex usu—*advantageous*; usus rerum nauticarum—*seamanship*; ad hunc usum idoneus—*suitable for the purpose*; usu venio—*happen*; usus est—*there is need.*

ŭt, ŭtī, adv. and conj. *how, as, as though, supposing that, since, when*; c. subj. *in order that, so that, although.*

ŭter, tra, trum, *which of two, whichever of the two.*

ŭterque, traque, trumque, *both.*

ūtilis, e, *useful, serviceable.*

ūtilitās, ātis, f. *usefulness, advantage.*

ūtor, ūsus sum (3), intr. c. abl. *use, employ, show, exercise, enjoy, benefit by*; u. eodem consilio—*join the enterprise*; u. suis legibus—*be autonomous*; u. multā linguā—*speak a language fluently*; u. condicione—*accept, receive terms.*

ŭtrimque, adv. *on both sides.*

uxor, ōris, f. *wife.*

văcātio, ōnis, f. *exemption from service.*

văco (1), intr. *am empty, remain uninhabited.*

vădum, i, n. *ford, shoal*; vado transitur—*is fordable.*

vāgīna, ae, f. *sheath.*

văgor (1), intr. *roam, wander, ride up and down, scour the country.*

văleo, ui (2), intr. *am strong, have weight, effect, power*; plus valet—*is the stronger motive.*

vălētūdo, īnis, f. *health, infirmity.*

vallēs, is, f. *valley.*

vallum, i, n. *rampart.*

văriĕtās, ātis, f. *diversity*; v. pellium—*piebald coats*; species varietasque — *variegated appearance.*

vasto (1), tr. *lay waste.*

-vĕ, enclitic, *or.*

vectīgal, ālis, n. *tax, tribute.*

vectīgālis, e, *tributary.*

vectōrius, a, um, *for transport.*

vĕl, conj. and adv. *or, even*; vel . . . vel—*either . . . or.*

vēlōcissimē, superl. adv. *very swiftly.*

vēlōcitās, ātis, f. *speed.*

vēnātio, ōnis, f. *hunting.*

vendo, dĭdi, dĭtum (3), tr. *sell.*

vĕnio, vēni, ventum (4), intr. *come*; v. usu—*happen*; v. in contemptionem — *incur contempt*; v. in summum cruciatum — *incur the most cruel punishment*; v. in summam spem—*see great reason to hope.*

ventĭto (1), intr. *come and go*; v. ad—*visit.*

ventus, i, m. *wind*; vento se dare—*run before the wind.*

verbum, i, n. *word*; facio verba pro—*intercede for.*

vĕreor, vĕrĭtus sum (2), tr. *fear.*

vergo (3), intr. *lean, lie, trend, slope.*

vergobrĕtus, i, m. *vergobret*; chief magistrate of the Haedui.

vēro, adv. *in truth, but, however.*

verso (1), tr. *move about, play with* (see note on v. 44. 14); pass. *am active, move about,*

pass one's life, remain; v. in periculo—*am in peril*; v. in opere—*go about the work*; v. in bello—*take the field*; v. inter aciem—*take part in fighting*; versatus inter—*mingling with.*
versus, ūs, m. *verse, line.*
verto, ti, sum (3), tr. *turn*; v. terga—*take to flight.*
vērus, a, um, *true, fair, reasonable*; veri similis—*probable.*
vĕrūtum, i, n. *dart.*
vesper, ĕris and ĕri, m. *evening.*
vestīgium, i, n. *footprint, tracks, moment*; in vestigio—*on the spot, immediately*; eodem vestigio remanere—*stand still.*
vestio (4), tr. *clothe, cover, coat.*
vestītus, ūs, m. *clothing, cloak.*
vĕto, ui, ĭtum, āre, tr. *forbid.*
vĕtus, ĕris, *old, veteran, long-standing.*
vexo (1), tr. *make raids on, overrun.*
via, ae, f. *road, route, march.*
viātor, ōris, m. *traveller.*
vīciēs, adv. *twenty times.*
vĭcis (gen.), f. *change*; in vicem—*in turn.*
victor, ōris, *victorious.*
victōria, ae, f. *victory.*
victus, ūs, m. *living, livelihood, meals.*
vīcus, i, m. *village.*
vĭdeo, vīdi, vīsum (2), tr. *see*; pass. *am seen, seem, seem good.*
vĭgĭlia, ae, f. *watch, wakefulness.*
vīmĕn, ĭnis, n. *twig, wicker-work, wattle-work.*
vĭncio, nxi, nctum (4), tr. *fetter, bind.*
vinco, vīci, victum (3), tr. *conquer, have one's way*; naturam studio vinco—*show superhuman zeal.*
vinculum, i, n. *chain*; pl. *prison, chains.*
vindĭco (1), tr. *claim*; v. Galliam in libertatem—*restore the liberty of Gaul*; v. graviter in aliquem—*punish a person severely.*
vinum, i, n. *wine.*
viŏlo (1), tr. *molest, ill-treat.*
vĭr, vĭri, m. *man, married man.*
vīres, see **vis.**
virgo, ĭnis, f. *virgin.*
virtūs, ūtis, f. *valour, vigour, merit, character*; virtute contendo—*fight like men.*
vīs, vim, vi, plur. vīres, f. *violence, force, vigour, power*; vi summā, *furiously*; vi contendo—*force one's way*; vim facio—*use force*; plur. *strength.*
vīta, ae, f. *life.*
vīto (1), tr. *avoid*; v. tela—*get out of range.*
vĭtrum, i, n. *woad.*
vīvo, vixi, victum (3), intr. *live*; c. abl. *live on.*
vīvus, a, um, *alive, living.*
vix, adv. *barely, scarcely.*
vŏco (1), tr. *call, summon, name.*
vŏlo, ui, velle, tr. and intr. *wish, want, am willing, mean*; quid sibi vult—*what does he mean?*
vŏluntārius, i, m. *volunteer.*
vŏluntās, ātis, f. *will, inclination, goodwill, loyalty, temper*; voluntate, *voluntarily*; voluntate eius—*with his consent.*
vŏluptās, ātis, f. *pleasure, amusement.*
vōs, *you.*
vŏveo, vōvi, vōtum (2), tr. *vow.*
vox, vōcis, f. *word*; plur. *talk, remarks, chatter.*
vulgo, adv. *generally, often.*
vulgus, i, n. *the people, a crowd*; v. militum—*the ranks.*
vulnĕro (1), tr. *wound, stab.*
vulnus, ĕris, n. *wound.*

Printed in England at the Oxford University Press